

1272.e.7 7c
A
S Y S T E M
O F
FRENCH SYNTAX,

INTENDED AS AN
Illustration, Correction, and Improvement
OF THE
Principles laid down by CHAMBAUD,
ON THAT SUBJECT,
IN HIS GRAMMAR.

By the Rev. Mr. HOLDER, of Barbadoes.

LONDON:
PRINTED FOR CHARLES DILLY.
M.DCC.LXXXIII.

M E T S Y S

60

ХАТИУЗ НАЗЯЙ

YAN XIAO CHENG YUAN



MVSEVM
BRITAN
NICVM

P R E F A C E.

SOME apology may be necessary for undertaking to correct and new-model a work so long established in the esteem of the public, as CHAMBAUD's Grammar : I shall simply relate the motives which have induced me to attempt it, and leave every one to judge of them as he thinks proper..

The Syntax of the Grammar published by CHAMBAUD can by no means be defended as entirely free from imperfections. Though he has enriched it with many excellent and useful rules, he has not been happy in the formation, division, and arrangement of them : his reasoning too, I conceive to be often defective, and sometimes erroneous ;

hence many things, of importance to the illustration of the subject, require to be supplied, and some to be corrected. These considerations have induced me to endeavour to form a new Treatise upon French Syntax, from his materials, arranged and modelled after my own plan, and augmented by some select observations from *Restaut*, *Buffier*, and *Wailly*, and by more remarks of my own, which have been suggested by a careful perusal of many of the best French authors, and by a particular attention which I have for some time paid to the study of Grammar in general, and of French Grammar in particular. If I have unwarily given my own feeble judgment so great a latitude as that it should have led me into errors, I profess myself open to conviction and patient under correction; and shall think myself happy in having excited the attention of more skilful persons, on subjects which, I think,

P R E F A C E.

v

require to be considered, and in having this, my first essay to serve the literary world, amended and improved by their well-directed criticism. It will not be improper to point out an alteration which I have made in CHAMBAUD's System:—From the similitude between the Nominative and Accusative Cases of Nouns in the French language (as well as in other modern languages) which, admitting of no change of termination, must have those cases, which are not necessarily preceded by Prepositions, entirely alike, he has considered French Nouns as having no Accusative. The Pronouns Personal he could not so easily deprive of their Accusative; he has therefore been obliged sometimes to describe Verbs as governing the Accusative of Pronouns, in contradistinction to Nouns, and sometimes to make them govern the Nominative Case, contrary to the usage of all other languages, and to the precepts of the best

best Grammarians of his own language ; and thus has created a strange perplexity, where there was no necessity for it ; which is by no means diminished, by his calling the cases, generally known by the names of the *Nominative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, and *Accusative*, by the new appellations of *first*, *second*, *third*, and *fourth States*. To remedy these inconveniences, I have restored the *Accusative Case* to the Nouns, the ancient names of the cases to all the declinable parts of speech, and the accustomed regimen to the Verbs, as being more familiar than the innovations of our Grammarians, and of course better adapted to the purposes of instruction. I shall avoid mentioning any farther alterations which I have attempted, referring the reader to a comparison, which he may himself easily make, of the works in question ; and appealing to such a comparison, and to his candour, for the justification of them. I presume

P R E F A C E. vii

sume that it will be no objection to this Treatise, that it does not contain any thing on the subject of French *Accidence*; for as that may be learnt from any former publication *, and is supposed to have been previously acquired by those for whom this is principally designed, it would have served only to swell it, and make it more expensive, without being of any real, or at least proportionable, advantage to the purchaser.

* And with advantage too from Chambaud's Grammar, with the precaution of supplying the defect in the Accusative Case, and substituting the Common Names of the Cases in the place of his *Sates*.

E R R A T A.

M A T E R I A L

or noisome on rd. like si iadi omni
miascos for each si iadi plas. T aidi
dono. I lo fiajek sdi no padi yas
most suzel ad yam. Tadi er tut yashinob.
-qut si bns. T mafasidag tadiq yas
harings yliqibiq asid er si bns.
yliqibiq si iadi apdw tel sion yd
er yliqibiq.

E R R A T A.

P.	27,	for	<i>fugit,</i>	read	<i>fujiſt.</i>
	48,	—	<i>aimée-je?</i>	—	<i>aimé-je?</i>
	72,	—	<i>finesse,</i>	—	<i>finiffe.</i>
	86,	—	<i>toute,</i>	—	<i>tout.</i>
	114,	—	<i>voire,</i>	—	<i>voir.</i>
	143,	—	<i>s'endureir,</i>	—	<i>s'endurcir.</i>
		—	<i>s'opiniâtier,</i>	—	<i>s'opiniâtrer.</i>
	167,	—	<i>L'un mourant,</i>	—	<i>L'an en mourant.</i>
	228,	—	<i>nenotes,</i>	—	<i>denotes.</i>
	344,	—	<i>J'allors,</i>	—	<i>J'allois.</i>
		—	<i>étort,</i>	—	<i>étois.</i>

A
S Y S T E M
O F
FRENCH SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I.

Of Nouns.

1. WHEN two Substantives come together, and are connected in their signification, the latter is put in the Genitive Case ; *les gardes du roi.*

N O T E.

Adverbs when used substantively, govern the following Noun in the Genitive :—*Il y a prodigieusement de mal.* VOLTAIRE. *Il dépense infiniment de sucs.* RAYNAL. Elle avoit médiocrement d'esprit. SULLY.—Where we observe that the Substantive of the Genitive takes no Article.

2. When more than two Nouns come together, they follow the same rule ; i. e. that the first governs the second in the Genitive Case, the second the third, and so on after the same manner :—*Pour le service de la flotte du roi :—Voici la maison de l'associé du frère de ma femme.*

B

3. The

3. The Adjective and Substantive agree in Number, Gender, and Case:—*Un beau prince; une belle princesse; la méchante femme; de méchantes gens.*

When two or more Substantives of different Numbers and Genders, or Genders only, put in apposition, i. e. in the same case, and connected by a Conjunction, have an Adjective common to them, it agrees in Number and Gender with the last:—*Il avoit les yeux et la bouche ouverte; Il avoit la bouche et les yeux ouverts; Les étangs et les rivières glacées.*

But when there be one or many words between the last Substantive and the Adjective, that Adjective (common to the Substantives) agrees with the Noun Masculine, though the last be Feminine:—*L'étang et la rivière étoient glacés; Les étangs et la rivière qu'il trouva glacés.*—And if the Nouns are singular, then the Adjective, common to all, shall be put in the Plural Number and Masculine Gender:—*Le travail, la conduite, et la fortune, joints ensemble.*

And when the Adjective, common to three or more Nouns, whether of the same, or of different Genders, is preceded and governed by the Verb *être*, it must have another Noun Plural (as *choses, biens, mœux*, as the Case may require) to agree with:—*L'or, l'argent, la renommée, les honneurs et les dignités sont des choses incertaines et perissables; or, des biens incertains et périssables.*

Sometimes when a Noun of the Plural Number is used to imply two species of the same genus, and that, to explain that implication more clearly, two Qualities or Adjectives are joined

joined to it, one of which refers to the one species, and the other to the other ; these Qualities are put in the Singular Number, but agree in Gender with the Substantive :—*L'influence des deux saisons (des beaux jours et de la pluie) est encore plus marqué sur les deux mers de l'Inde, où on les distingue sous le nom de Moussons secbe et pluvieuse :* (*RAYNAL, Histoire Philosophique et Politique.*) Marie Therèse avoit renoncé aux *successions paternelle, et maternelle :* (*GAILLARD, Histoire de la Rivalité de la France et de l'Angleterre.*)

N O T E.

Chose (a thing, which is properly Feminine) being joined to *quelque* (*quelque chose*, something) is Masculine, and therefore requires the next Adjective or Pronoun (which with respect to the subject in question is the same thing) Relative, to agree with that Gender :—*Je suis assis sur quelque chose qui me paroît dur : Quand j'ai perdu quelque chose je le cherche.*

Chose and *affaire* are used to express decently certain parts of the body, which we would not wish to name ; and in that sense they are Masculine :—*On voit son chose : On lui a coupé le chose : Son affaire est verreux.*

La partie, la plupart, foule, multitude, nombre, moitié, espece, sorte, governing a Substantive Masculine in the Genitive Case, and attended by an Adjective, will not have the Adjective to agree with them, but with the Genitive Substantive :—*Il a une partie du bras cassé, not cassée : Il trouva une partie de ses hommes morts, not morte : Quand il vit la plupart, or la moitié de ses gens étendus par terre, not étendue : Une troupe de gens étourdis, not étourdie : Une espece de bois qui est assez dur : Une sorte de vin qui est bon.*—The reason of this is evident ; the arm was broken, not the part ; the soldiers were killed, not the half ; and so of the rest.

But the other collective Nouns are not liable to this construction, and we say, *Le tiers des vignes est gelé, not gélée : Les trois quarts du château furent brûlés, not, fut brûlé* ;—because the third and the three-fourths of the vines and castle were actually frozen and burnt.

Of the Use of the ARTICLE.

THE Article is prefixed to Substantives expressing *species, individuals, or parts of a species*, though not considered as individuals of that species:—*L'homme* est né, or *les hommes* sont nés pour la société; (that is, *all men.*) *L'homme* dont je parle n'est pas sociable; (i. e. *the individual of whom I speak.*) *Du pain* me suffit (*some bread*, implying *a part of the species* of food in the world called *bread*, and not *any individual loaf*:)—where we observe the Article blended with the Preposition *de*, to imply this partitive sense.

In general, the Article is used before all Substantives used as Denominatives; i. e. significant of their own *substantial character*: therefore Nouns of *substances, arts, sciences, metals, virtues and vices*, Nouns of *countries, kingdoms, and provinces, mountains, rivers, and winds*, and such like, having no Article in English, require it before them in French.

L'or et l'argent ne saurôient faire *le bonheur de l'homme*: *La vertu* seule peut le rendre heureux; et il n'y a que *le vice* qui puisse le rendre malheureux: *La France* est *le plus beau pays de l'Europe*, &c.

N O T E.

From the names of *countries, kingdoms, provinces*, except those, which take their names from their capital cities, besides some republics:—

Algér,	Cornoüailles,	Luques,	Naples,
Avignon,	Chipre,	Léon,	Orange,
Babilone,	Carthage,	Malthe,	Rome,
Candie,	Grénade, Tripoli,	Maroc,	Roannèz,
Cerdoue,	Gènes, Valence,	Murcie,	Seville,
Corse,	Genèves, Vénise,	Madagascar,	Tolède,
Comminges,	Florence,	Monaco,	Tunis.
			Except

Except some few (taken notice of in Chambaud's Exercises) these proper names are mostly used with one of these general Nouns before them; *république*, *principauté*, *état*, *pays*, *île*:—*L'Isle de Candie*, *le Pays d'Avignon*, *la Principauté d'Orange*, *la République de Monaco*, &c.

But when the words attending the names of Countries and kingdoms imply *coming from*, or *going out*, then the names of those countries take no Article:—*Venir de France*, to come from France; *sortir d'Angleterre*, to go out of England.

In the same manner, with words denoting *the country one lives in*, and whether *one is going or coming*, we use the Preposition *en*, before the names of such countries, without the Article:—*Demeurer en France*, to live in France; *aller en Italie*, to go into Italy; *venir ou passer en Angleterre*, to come or pass into England.

And when the name of a kingdom or province expresses the country of the Noun preceding it, it is also used without the Article: as, *Roi ou royaume d'Angleterre*; *gouverneur ou gouvernement d'Irlande*; *vin de Bourgogne*; *l'électeur de Bavière*; *une mode de France*, &c.

But the following names of countries always keep the Article, viz.

l'Inde,	le Zanguébar,	la Guadeloupe,
l'Indostan,	le Mexique,	la Havane,
le Malabar,	le Paraguay,	le Pont Euxin,
les Indes,	le Chili,	le Peloponnes,
la Chine,	le Perou,	les Phillipines,
la Nigritie,	le Brésil,	l'Isle Bourbon,
la Guinée.	le Canada,	les Isles Moluques,
la Malaguette,	la Louisiane,	les Antilles,
le Congo,	le Mississippi,	le Caire,
la Conchinchine,	l'Acadie,	le Levant,
le Pegu,	la Cayenne,	la Mecque,
le Tonquin,	la Caroline,	l'Abruzze,
le Thibet,	la Barbade,	l'Appouille,
le Japon,	la Jamaïque,	le Mantouan,
l'Abyssinie,	le Maryland,	le Milanois,
le Mogol,	la Pensilvanie,	le Parmézan,
le Monomotapa,	la Virginie,	le Spitzberg,
le Monoemurgi,	la Martinique,	le Groenland.
la Cafrière,		

6 A System of FRENCH SYNTAX.

As also these names of countries and cities :

l'Anjou,	le Château Cambresis,	la Guèrche,
l'Artois,	la Corune,	la Hogue,
le Maine,	la Fère,	le Mans,
la Marche,	la Ferté,	le Plessis, le Paï,
le Perche,	la Charité,	le Quenoi,
la Capelle,	le Havre de Grace,	la Rochelle,
le Catelet,	la Flèche,	la Haye.

Therefore instead of the Prepositions *de* and *en*, which we use in conjunction with the names of other countries, in the cases above mentioned, when we speak of these, we use both the Preposition and Article :—*Voyager aux Indes*; *aller au Japon*; *demeurer à la Chine*; *partir du Mexique*; *revenir de l'Anjou*:—We say too, *Aller dans l'Anjou*; *dans le Perche*; *le Duc d'Anjou*, *le Duc du Maine*; *Empire et Empereur de la Chine*; *porcelaines de la Chine*; *marchandises du Japon*.

When a river's name is preceded by the word *rivière*, it takes the Article, if it is of the Masculine Gender, and the Preposition *de* only, if it is of the Feminine; otherwise they all take the Article :—*La Rivière du Rhône*; *la Rivière de Seine*; or, *le Rhône*, *la Seine*, *la Thamise*.

N O T E.

It is to be observed, 1. That some rivers cannot be construed with *rivière* before them, whereas all take the Article: we say indiscriminately *le Rbein*, *le Rhône*, *la Seine*, *la Thamise*; but we cannot equally say, *la Riviere du Rbein*, and *la Riviere de la Seine*, because common use is against it, which, in living language, has great weight:—2. That the word *fleuve* (synonymous with *rivière*) can seldom be put before the proper name of a river:—3. That the French properly call *fleuve*, a river which carries its waters to the sea; and *rivière*, a river which discharges itself into another; and though *rivière* is sometimes used for *fleuve*, yet *fleuve* cannot be properly used for *rivière*.

When a mountain's or hill's name is preceded by the word *mont*, it has neither Article nor Preposition:

position :—*Le Mont Vesuve, le Mont Appennin, les Monts Pirénées.*

After the word *montagne*, the Preposition *de* is used (which is contracted with the Article, when the name of the hill has it) :—*La Montagne de Sion, la Montagne de Potosi, la Montagne du Calvaire, la Montagne de Pic de Teyde.* Otherwise they all take the Article :—*Le Vesuve, l'Appennin, les Pirénées, le Calvaire, le Pic, &c.*

N O T E S.

Some Nouns of hills and mountains will always be preceded by *mont* or *montagne* :—*La Montagne de Potosi, la Montagne de Sion, or le Mont Sion;* and some others can never be construed with these words : *les Alpes, les Cordillères.* We neither say, *les Montagnes des Alpes*, nor *les Monts Alpes*, as we say *les Monts Pirénées*; although we denote the *Alps* by *les Monts* absolutely in this Phrase,—*un bel esprit de delà les Monts*, or, *un bel esprit Ultramontain* (an ultramontane genius); by which we are to understand that a Frenchman speaks in ridicule of the Italians, who, with respect to France, are *au delà les Monts*, or *les Alpes.*

The Noun of the *measure, weight, and number* of the thing that has been bought, requires the Article :—*Le blé se vend une écu le boisseau,* (for a crown *the*, or *a*, bushel.) *Le beurre se vend six sous la livre.* *Les oeufs valent quatre sous la douzaine.*

The twenty-one following Prepositions will always have the Article after them before the next Noun :

avant,	depuis,	envers,
après,	devant,	hors,
chez,	derrière,	excepté,
dans,	durant,	hormis,

non obstant,	felon,	sur,
parmi,	fous,	touchant,
pendant,	suivant,	vers.

*Chez le prince, dans la chambre, sous la table,
&c.*

En will have no Article before the next Noun ;
en ville, en campagne.

The use of the Article after the ten following, depends on the character of the Noun : when it implies a *denomination* or *appellation* (i. e. has the true force of a Substantive) it takes the Article ; but when on the contrary, it implies a *modification* or *qualification* (i. e. forms with the Preposition a kind of compound quality, with respect to its meaning) it is then used without an Article.

à, de,	entre,	malgré,
avec,	par,	outre,
contre,	pour,	sans.

Examples will explain the apparent difficulty of this rule :—*Sans les passions où seroient la vertu et le vice ?* (*without the passions, &c.*) *Vivre sans passions c'est vivre sans plaisirs ;* (*living without passions is living without pleasures.*) *Passions, vertu and vice,* in the first sentence, are used as *Denominatives*, or names of the things which are the subject of our speech ; they are the emphatical words of the sentence :—but *passions* and *plaisirs* are not used in the second as *Denominatives* ; for they are not the things of which something is affirmed : *vivre* (*living*) is the thing spoken of : they are only used as modifying words, qualifying and specifying that *living*.

The

The Article is used before all Nouns of dignities, qualities, offices, and professions, even before terms of abuse, provided they come after such names as *Monsieur*, *Monseigneur*, *Madame*, *Made-moiselle*: — *Monsieur le Dauphin*, *Madame la Duchesse*, *M. le Docteur*, *Monseigneur l'Archevêque*, *Monsieur la Paresseux*, *Madame la Courteuse*, *Madame la Libertine*, &c.

Except with Nouns of Trades and Professions of the mechanical kind, which never take *Monsieur* or *Madame* before them: thus we cannot say, *M. le Marchand*, *M. le Cordonnier*, *M. le Tailleur*, &c.

N O T E.

The Article prefixed to Nouns Singular, expresses sometimes the Vocative: *Ecoutez la belle fille!* (hark ye, pretty girl!) *Parlez l'homme!* parlez *la femme!* (speak man, or woman!)

In the Plural, however, the usage of good authors is to put the Vocative Noun without the Article: — “*Ecoutez, Dieux du Ciel!*” VERTOT. “*Peuples!* chez qui les rois ordonnent aujourd’hui tout ce qu’ils veulent, relisez “*votre histoire.*” RAYNAL. “*Gens de cour!* votre “*grandeur est dans vos terres, & non aux pieds d’un maître!*” Ibid.

We say too, vocatively, — *Ecoutez bon homme! bonne femme!* and with an Adjective without a Noun, — *Etudiez, paresseux!* (Study, you idle fellow!) *Cocber!* êtes-vous loué? — Though in instances like the following, the Article seems necessary on account of the Regimen joined to the Vocative Noun: — *Venez ici, la femme aux berbes! l’homme aux lapins!* (Come hither, herb woman! you man with the rabbits!)

The interjection *O!* is only used in exclamations; — *O infortuné que je suis!* *O femme! que ta vertu est grande!*

The Article is used in certain idiomatic sentences of exclamation and admiration, which begin with a Noun and Adjective, the Particle *que*

following, and the same Noun repeated, without a Verb:—*L'illustre maison que la maison de Bourbon!* (What an illustrious house is the house of Bourbon! literally, the illustrious house, namely, the house of Bourbon!)

We have seen that when the Noun is used to denote only *part* of the substance (or thing expressed by the Noun) that limited sense is signified by the Particle *de*, before the Article if the Noun be feminine, or contracted with it, if it be masculine: (*de la*; *du*.) Nouns taken in that sense imply the word *some* in English, either expressed or understood:—*Donnez-moi du pain, de la viande, de l'argent, des habits*; (give me *some* bread, *some* meat, *some* money, cloaths:)—*Cette liqueur ressemble à du vin*; (that liquor is like wine:)—*J'ai affaire à des gens très honnêtes*; (I have to do with very honest people.)

But when the Noun is preceded by an Adjective, it loses its Article, retaining only *de*:—*Donnez-moi de bon pain, de bonne viande, de bons habits*; *J'ai affaire à de très honnêtes gens.*

N O T E.

There is a material difference in the two following expressions:—*On l'a dépouillé de belles charges qu'il possédoit*; —and, *On l'a dépouillé des belles charges qu'il possédoit*—The first implies that he has been deprived of *certain* of the fine posts which he held; the second, that he has been deprived of *all* the fine posts which he held.

In some cases it may be indifferent to use either of the two Particles *du* or *un*:—*J'entends du bruit là haut*; or, *un bruit là haut*; (I hear *some* or *a noise*.) Generally speaking, however, when the Noun is used without an Adjective, it requires

quires *du*; but, with one, *un*: and when a relative sentence follows, I think *un* should be prefixed to the Noun in preference to *du*.—Il y a *du danger à aller sur mèr*: Ceux qui vont sur mèr, courrent *un grand danger* [or *de grands dangers*]: J'entends *un bruit qui m'étoourdit*.

The Particle *un* (which is, however, no more an Article than *quelque* or *tout*) is also used in speaking of things which comprehend the idea of unity; that is, which are not detached parts of an whole, but individuals of a species, and which can be told *one by one*, or *in opposition to two or more*:—J'ai *un pain*, (I have *a loaf of bread*;) Je ne veux qu'*une pomme*, (I want only *one apple*).

The Pronouns *moi, toi, soi, ce, celui, qui, quel* (in the sense of *what*), *mon, ton, son, &c.* (but not *mièn, tièn, sièn, même*, and *quèl* in the sense of *which*) take no Article; but only the Prepositions *de, à, &c.*—*De qui parlez-vous?* (*of what man?* &c.) *du quèl, de la quelle?* (*of which?*) *de lui, d'elle, d'eux.*

No Article is used with Proper Names of persons, places, and planets (except *la terre, le soleil, la lune*) and before those titles of honour which use has prefixed to proper names:

Monsieur,	Maitre,
Madame,	Messire, (a particular title of
Mademoiselle,	Saint, some persons of dis-
Monseigneur,	Sainte. tinction and saints.)

But when these Nouns are used without the Pronoun of which they are composed, they take

the Article; as, *le Sieur*, *la Démoiselle*, *la Dame*, &c. although we say *les Messieurs* qui sont ici.

N O T E.

The rule of Proper Names has no force with respect to those names which are compounded of an Article; and therefore are evidently out of the question; such as, *du Pré*, *G. de du Pré*, *D. à du Pré*; *de Tourville*, *G. de de Tourville*, *D. à de Tourville*; *le Maître*, *G. de le Maître*, *D. à le Maître*; *la Place*, *G. de la Place*, *D. à la Place*:—where we see that the Preposition and Article are not blended as in common Genitives; *de le Maître*, not *du Maître*.

There are, besides, other names which custom has distinguished by the Article, which are not subject to this rule; such as, *le Tasse*, *G. du Tasse*, *D. àù Tasse*; *l'Arioste*, *G. de l'Arioste*, *D. à l'Arioste*; *le Poussin*, *l'Arétin*, *le Bourdon*, *le Brugle*, *le Carache*, *le Corrège*, *le Guido*, *le Guerchin*, *le Mutton*, *le Petrarche*, *le Tintoret*, *l'Albane*, *le Bernardin*, *le Dominiquan*, *l'Espagnole*, *le Penturricchio*.

Thus too, when we speak in a contemptuous manner of a woman, we use the Article, besides the Particle of the proper name:—*La Camargo* est une bonne danseuse: C'est un conte de *la le Maure*: Je ne veux plus voir *la du Pré*. [This additional Article is useful in order to ascertain the sex of such females as we do not think worthy of the more honourable distinction of *Madame* or *Mademoiselle*: and, besides, as it is prefixed to women supposed to be universally known, such as *actresses*, *dancers*, and *women of the town*, we may explain this use of it, by supposing the expression elliptical for—*la du Pré que tout le monde connaît*, or something of the same nature.]

The Preposition *de* is sometimes left out before the word *Saint*, and before names of places, for abbreviation:—*L'Eglise Saint Paul*, *le Cimetière Saint Jean*, *la Foire Saint Laurent*, *la Porte Saint Denis*, *le Faubourg Saint Germain*, *le Quai Pelleter*, *le Cours la Reine*, and *le Cour la Reine*.

When Proper Names are used in a determined emphatical sense; that is, when they are applied to objects, in order to mark them in a particular manner,

manner, or when they are qualified by an Adjective, they take the Article:—*Le Dieu des Chrétiens* (the God of the Christians); *le bon Dieu* ne sauroit être cruel; *l'Archimède de l'Angleterre*; *l'Amphitryon de Molière*; * *les Cicerons et les Demosthènes*.

N O T E.

* It is frequently the usage of very excellent authors, in similar cases, to put the Article in the plural, but to leave the name in the singular as undeclinable: “ Ce que nous ‘ perès ont admiré dans les *du Guesclin*, *les Bayard*, et *les Dunois*. (Oeuvres de M. THOMAS, T. ii. chap. 31.)

When an Adjective is used substantively, or its Noun is understood, it requires the Article; as speaking of colours:—*Le vèrd blesse moins la vüe que le rouge*: Après qu'on eût bu tout le vin rouge, on donna sur *le blanc*.

When Adjectives are used to qualify a Proper Name, so as to distinguish one from several persons who bear the same name, the Article is put before them:—*Louis le bien aimé*: Chilperic le fainéant.

When a Noun has two Adjectives joined together by a Conjunction, if the Adjectives are of synonymous or cognate signification, the Article is put only before the first:—*La belle et savante harangue qu'il a faite*. But if the Adjectives are of various or contrary signification, the Article must be repeated before them both:—*Le savant et le pieux personage*: *Les belles et les laides femmes* ont également envie de plaire.

Articles are repeated, in French, before as many Nouns (requiring naturally the Article) as there are in the sentence:—*L'or, l'argent, la santé,*

santé, les honneurs, et les plaisirs, ne saurôient rendre l'homme heureux, sans la science et la vertu.

NOTE.

We may sometimes indifferently use the Articles *le* or *du*, *les* or *des*, or no Article at all, before Nouns whose signification we do not wish to modify, define, or restrain, particularly; but mean merely to express, generally, the ideas conveyed by them: thus we may say

les gens d'esprit
or, *des gens d'esprit* } font toujours plaisir;
or even, *gens d'esprit* }

because the subject only requires the idea of *ingenious people* to be simply implied.

Particular Instances where the GENITIVE CASE is used without the ARTICLE.

The Preposition *de* only, without the Article, is used, 1st, before Nouns following one of these, *sorte*, *espèce*, *genre*, and any other Noun of which they express the *kind*, *character*, *cause*, *matter*, *quality*, *nature*, and *country*; which tribe of Nouns is usually englisched by an Adjective, or by the Noun itself, used adjectively, and making, together with the other Noun, a compound word as it were:—*Un mal de tête*, (a head-ach;) *une sorte de fruit*, (a kind of fruit;) *une étoffe de soie*, (a silk stuff;) *une montre d'or*, (a gold watch;) *de la laine d'Espagne*, (Spanish wool;) *une conduite de fou*, (a foolish conduct;) *un corps de nation*, (a national body;) *un corps d'armée*, (an army).

NOTE.

But where the French have an Adjective, which has the same force as the Noun in the Genitive, it may be used like the English Adjective, in the place of such Genitive:—*Une conduite folle*; instead of, *une conduite de fou*. They often,

often, however, are defective, in this particular, and then are obliged to use the Noun as above: thence we must render these (with other English Adjectives which use will point out) by means of the cognate Noun:—*My devilish wife; ma diablesse de femme*: *My good-for-nothing son and his rascally mother; mon vaurien de fils et sa coquine de mère*.—The English phrase, *he is the devil of a man*, is turned into French—*C'est un diable d'homme*.

2dly. The Preposition *de* only, without the Article, is used before the word of the measure of magnitude or increase:—*Il croit tous les jours d'un pouce*, (he grows an inch every day; i.e. he increases every day by an inch).

N O T E.

D'un pouce has, in the above instance, rather the force of an Ablative than a Genitive.

3dly. It is used in the same manner, after Pronouns indeterminate, *Pèrsonne, quelqu'un*, and *quoi, ce qui, ce que, tout ce qui, je ne sçais quoi*, and the impersonal *il y a*:—*Il n'y a personne de blessé*, (there is no body wounded;) *Y en avoit il quelqu'un d'ivre?* (was any of them drunk?) *Il y a dans son style je ne sçais quoi de dur*, (something unaccountably harsh;) *Ce que je remarque de drôle*, (what I observe comical).

4thly. As also after Nouns of number followed by a Participle:—*Il y a trente vaisseaux d'achevés*, (there are thirty vessels finished;) “*C'étoit un grand pas de fait*,” RAYNAL, Hist. Phil. et Polit. (this was one great point gained).

N O T E.

The Preposition (*de*) may be sometimes omitted, when the Noun is expressed before the Participle, as in the above example, *trente vaisseaux achevés*; but it is more elegant to use it: when, however, the Pronoun *en* is inserted as the substitute

substitute of the Noun, it can by no means be left out (and for this evident reason, that as *en* is genitive, its regimen should be so in like manner:) Il y en a trente d'achevés; il y en eut cinquante de tués, et cent de blessés.

5thly. The Preposition *de*, without the Article, is used after these words of quantity:

abondance, *abondance de vivres*, plenty of victuals.
assez, *assez de provisions*, provisions enough.
beaucoup, *beaucoup d'esprit*, much wit.

N O T E.

Bien is also used for *beaucoup*; but with this difference, that it requires the Article:

<i>bien de la peine,</i>	{	<i>beaucoup de peine,</i>
<i>bien du tems,</i>		<i>beaucoup de tems,</i>
<i>bien de l'argent,</i>		<i>beaucoup d'argent.</i>

Observe with respect to *assez*, that it is never put in French after the Noun, as in English, but always before: *assez de tems*, time enough.

combien,	<i>combien de vaisseaux?</i> how many ships?
disette,	<i>disette de savans</i> , scarcity of learned men.
guères,	<i>guères d'argent</i> , very little money.
peu,	<i>peu de gens croient</i> , few people think.
plus,	<i>plus d'effets</i> , and more deeds, and
moins,	<i>moins de paroles</i> , fewer words.
d'avantage,	<i>Je n'en ai pas d'avantage</i> , I have no more of it.
quantité,	<i>quantité de fruit</i> , a great deal of fruit.
grand nombre,	<i>grand nombre de soldats</i> , a vast number of soldiers.
	tant,

tant, *tant d'ecrivains le disent, so many writers say so,*
 autant, *autant de femmes que d'hommes, as many women as men.*
 trop, *trop de peine, too much trouble.*

As likewise after point, *point de sens commun!* no common sense.

N O T E.

Chambaud mentions no other negative Particle but *point*, which has this regimen, although instances frequently occur in the best authors, of its being used with *pas* and *ne*:—*Il n'y a pas d'homme*, RAYNAL, (there is not a man;) *il ne peut y avoir d'injustice plus grande que celle-là*, (where *pouvoir* taking but one negative, the *ne* has equal force with *ne* and *pas*, in other sentences which admit of two negatives;) *compagnies où l'on n'aduge d'esprit qu'à ceux*, (where none are allowed to have wit but those)—(in which sentence one negative is used, because of the following *que*) The same regimen is used with *sans*, which (as will be hereafter particularly shown) has the force of a negative included in its signification: *Sans faire d'hostilité* (which amounts to the same as—*et ne firent point d'hostilité*.)

jamais, *il n'a jamais d'argent*, he has never [any money.
 que, *que de peines et de soins!* what care [and trouble!
 quoi, *quoi de plus juste!* what can be [fairer!
 rién, *rién de remarquable*, nothing ex-[traordinary.
 quelque chose, *quelque chose de bon*, something [good.

As also after certain Adjectives governing a Genitive: *digne de louange, indigne d'estime, &c.*

N O T E.

NOTE.

Observe however, that if the regimen of these words, i. e. the Noun following them, does not compleat the sense, but is determined by what follows, it requires the Article:—Though we say—donnez moi un peu de vin, we say, donnez moi un peu du vin qui est dans cette bouteille: and so of the Adjectives before mentioned: *indigne de l'estime que j'ai pour lui*, &c.

Instances where NOUNS are used without ARTICLE and PREPOSITION.

1st. The Article and Preposition are omitted before Nouns at the title of a work, and in the middle of a sentence, where they characterize in a particular manner the person or thing spoken of:—*Discours sur*, &c. *Preface*; *Table des matieres*; *Le Comte de Clermont*, *prince du sang*, *mourut*, &c. *Le St. George*, *vaisseau de guerre de 90 pieces de canon*.

2dly. When the Noun comes after a Pronoun interrogative or exclamative; as also in sentences of exclamation:—*Quel esprit!* *quelle beauté!* *quelle dame avez vous vu?* Les plus belles fleurs sont de bien peu de durée: la moindre pluie les ternit, le vent les fane, le soleil les brûle, & achève des les sécher; sans parler d'une infinité d'insectes qui les gâtent et les incommodent: *naturelle et véritable image de la beauté des dames!*

3dly. Before a Noun of number, whether preceding or following the Substantive (which Noun of number, when used as a surname to kings, &c. always comes last, and is of the *cardinal*, not the *ordinal*, tribe, as in English; except the number specified be the first or the second, George

George premier, Charles second:)—*Mille cavaliers contre cent fantassins, la partie n'est pas égale.* Louis quinze (Lewis the fifteenth,) Henri quatre (Henry the fourth).

N O T E.

But if the Substantive has a relation to something else besides the number, the Article is necessary: *Les cent fantassins qui se sont défendus contre les mille cavaliers qu'on avoit envoyés contr' eux, &c.*

41bly. After the Verb *être*, not having *ce* for its subject (*c'est,*) as likewise after *devenir*, *être estimé*, *être pris pour*, *passer pour*; because the Substantive following such Verbs, serves then only to qualify something spoken of; and instead of being *the principal character or subject of the sentence*, is rather *an attribute affirmed of the Substantive, or the predicate of the sentence*; and in general where Substantives perform this office, the Article is not prefixed to them:—"Mes paroles sont esprit et vie: les rois sont hommes, (kings are men, i. e. human:) elle est femme (or *c'est une femme*, where *femme* is a Substantive in its proper character, defining *ce*, which has merely the force of *it*:) il passe pour matelot: il deviendra docteur avec le temps:—"Joyeuse occupa aussi le public: après s'être fait capucin, de courtisan et de guerrier, et ensuite de capucin être redevenu guerrier et courtisan des plus répandus dans le monde, il reprit le froc; et cette fois il le garda jusqu'à la mort: le mariage de sa fille,

* Just as in Greek the *predicate of the sentence* is distinguished from the *subject*, by not having the Article—*ἡδονὴ εὐδαιμονία*; happiness is pleasure. See Harris's *Hermes*, Book ii. ch. 1. p. 230.

unique héritière de la maison de Joyeuse, avec M. le duc de Montpensier, fut sa dernière action, comme homme du monde.” (Mémoires de SULLY, Liv. x. sur la fin.) “Ce fut le troisième, *de pere en fils*, qui fut élevé à cette dignité.” (VERTOT Rom. Rev.) (where *de pere en fils* seems a kind of compound quality, expressing the idea of a lineal succession, without having any reference to *father* and *son*, otherwise than as explanatory of such idea. Although it is to be remembered, that wherever *de* and *en* govern two Nouns, immediately connected, as *pere* and *fils*, they never take the Article: Il court *de rûe en rûe*, &c.

N O T E.

But where the Substantive coming after *être*, or any of the Verbs before mentioned, be attended by an Adjective, or any other dependance, so as that its force is restrained and defined thereby, the Particle *un* must precede it:—Dieu est *esprit*; Dieu est *un esprit infini*; Dieu est *un être qui a toutes les perfections possibles*.

5thly. The Article and Preposition are likewise omitted, where Nouns are used in a general, vague, undetermined, unspecified, sense; as also in sentences pathetically expressed:—Le sage n'a ni *amour* ni *baine*: Non *homme* qui vive, n'auroit le front d'avancer que; (ROLLIN, Belles Lettres, L. vii.) *Intérêt, honneur, conscience* sont sacrifiés! (or, as occurs sometimes in elegant authors, *intérêt, honneur, conscience, tout est sacrifié*.)

6thly. And where too what is said conveys the force of a maxim; or is spoken proverbially:—“*Desir de jouir, liberté de jouir, il n'y a que ces deux ressorts d'activité, que ces deux principes de*

de sociabilité parmi les hommes ;” (RAYNAL, Hist. Philosoph. & Politique.”) “ *Maxime générale* : nourrir ses enfans, c'est une obligation du droit naturel : leur donner la succession, est une obligation du droit civil et politique ;” (MONTESQUIEU *Esprit des Loix.*) Mieux vaut *engin* que force ; (Prov.) *Grands vanteurs petits faiseurs.* (Prov.)

CHAPTER II.

Of ADJECTIVES.

IT might be observed in general of French Adjectives, that their natural place is *after* their Substantive ; but to avoid a long train of exceptions, we shall consider them after the manner of Chambaud, as coming some *before*, and some *after*, the Substantive.

1st. The following are put *before* their Substantive :

Pronominal Adjectives (or *Pronouns possessive*) *mon, ton, leur, &c.*—*Mon père, leur maison, &c.*

Pronouns indefinite :—*Quel, autre, chaque, plusieurs, quelque, &c.* EXCEPT *quelconque, quel homme, chaque femme, &c.*—*Toute juridiction quelconque.* (MONTESQUIEU.)

Numbers both cardinal, ordinal, and proportional :—*Deux personnes, le premier homme, un double profit.*

The following *sixteen common Adjectives* :

beau,	chétif,	mauvais,	petit,
bon,	grand,	méchant,	saint,
brave,	gros,	meilleur,	vieux,
cher,	jeune,	moindre,	vrai.

Un

Un beau garçon, un gros ventre, un brave officier, &c.

Certain Exceptions to rules of Adjectives placed after their Substantive:—*Un blanc-manger, un rouge bord, une rouge trogne, un rouge-gorge, un rouge-quëue, un vert galant, les blancs manteaux, and du vif-argent.*

2dly. The following come after their Substantive:

Adjectives of number, when they stand for a surname:—*George Second, Louis Quinze, &c.*

Verbal Adjectives:—*Un homme divertissant, la mode regnante, un pays habité, une femme estimée.*

Adjectives of names of nations:—*Un mathématicien Anglois, un tailleur François, la musique Italienne.*

Adjectives of colour:—*Un habit noir, un manteau rouge, (except certain instances above specified.)*

Adjectives of figure:—*Une table ronde, une chambre quarrée, &c.*

Adjectives expressing some physical or natural quality, and others respecting taste, bearing, feeling, &c.—*Un tems froid, ou chaud, du vin pur, un arbre fruitier, du fruit amèr, des jambes crochues, de la chair vive, la religion naturelle, &c. un mets ragoutant, un bruit sourd, des douleurs aigües, &c.*

Adjectives ending in èsque, ile, ule:—*Une figure grotesque, un discours puérile, une femme crédule.*

Adjectives ending in ic, ique, and if, (though some may also come before the Noun):—*Le bien public, un esprit pacifique, un enfant vif, &c.*

3dly.

3dly. Some Adjectives are put *before* or *after* Nouns.

When a book, chapter, article, page, &c. is quoted, the number may come *before* or *after*; with this difference however, that if it comes before, the Article is joined to it; but if after, neither the Substantive nor Adjective takes it:—*Le premier livre*; *livre premier*.

Adjectives ending in able (in general derived from Verbs) sometimes precede, and sometimes follow the Substantive; although the safest method is to make them follow it:—*Une aimable personne*, or, *une personne aimable*.

When the Noun is attended by two Adjectives, it is sometimes indifferent to put them before or after it:—*Un homme méchant et ingénieux*, or, *un ingénieux et méchant homme*: but here too they had best come after, as custom does not authorize our saying—*un méchant et ingénieux homme*.

N O T E.

But if the Noun has *three or more* Adjectives dependant on it, they must positively come after it; with the *inéclitique et* before the last; which must likewise always be observed, when there are only two Adjectives.

We say—*Un homme juste, une action juste*, and, *un juste prix, une juste défense*: *une action basse*, and *à bas prix*:—we likewise say, *le bas Languedoc, la basse Normandie*, &c.; but on the contrary say, *les Pays bas*.

N O T E.

Some Adjectives, which in their *proper sense* are put *after*, when used in a *figurative sense* are placed *before* their Substantive:

{ un fruit mûr,	a ripe fruit.
{ une mûre deliberation,	a mature deliberation.
{ un homme pauvre,	a poor man.
{ un pauvre homme,	a sorry fellow.
{ un homme honnête,	a civil man.
{ un honnête homme,	a gentleman, a man of honour.
{ un homme gentil,	a genteel man.
{ un gentil homme,	a man well descended.
{ une femme sage,	a discreet, sensible woman.
{ une sage femme,	a midwife.
{ un brave homme,	a brave man.
{ un homme brave,	one who wears fine cloaths.
{ une grosse femme,	a big, fat woman.
{ une femme grosse,	a woman with child.

N O T E.

Gros and *brave* are put before their Substantive in their natural signification, differently from the rest, because they are two of the sixteen Adjectives which come before their Substantive regularly. See p. 21.

{ un homme galant,	a man fond of the fair sex.
{ un galant homme,	a genteel, well-bred man. [nion.
{ un homme plaisant,	an agreeable, facetious compa-
{ un plaisant homme,	a ridiculous, impertinent fel-
{ un animal furieux,	a fierce animal. [low
{ un furieux animal,	a huge animal.
{ une nouvelle certaine,	news which maybe depended on.
{ une certaine nouvelle,	a certain piece of news, i. e.
	quelques nouvelles.
{ d'une voix commune,	with a voice which is common.
{ d'une commune voix,	unanimously, with one voice.
{ une eau morte,	a stagnant water.
{ la morte eau,	dead-low tide.
{ un habit nouveau,	a dress of a new fashion.
{ un nouvel habit,	one different from that which
	we had been wearing.
{ du vin nouveau,	wine newly made.
{ de nouveau vin,	wine different from what we
	had been drinking.

des

{ des gens <i>bonnées</i> ,	polite, civil people. [putation-
{ les <i>bonnées</i> gens d'une ville,	men of property, birth, and re-
cette vie mortelle,	this mortal life.
un mortel ennemi,	a sworn, declared enemy.
il y a trois mortelles lieues,	three long tedious leagues.
d'ici là. M. d'Oliver.	
un homme vrai,	a man of truth.
un vrai charlatan,	a mere, a real quack.
ce que vous dites est une	is a mere story.
vraie fable,	
{ J'ai vu le riche Lucullus,	I have seen Lucullus who is rich.
{ J'ai vu Lucullus le riche,	I have seen that Lucullus who is distinguished from others of the same name by his riches.
{ quelle est votre erreur ?	where lies your mistake ?
{ quelle erreur est la vôtre ?	is it possible that you have committed such an error ?
du bois mort,	any dry tree.
du mort bois,	wood of no value, such as briars, thorns, &c.

besides others, which do not immediately occur, but which we will point out.

4thly. The following Adjectives require *de* before the next Noun or Verb :

digne, <i>digne de louange.</i>	chargé, <i>chargé de dettes.</i>
indigne, <i>indigne de vivre.</i>	accusé, <i>accusé de mensonge.</i>
capable, <i>capable de servir sa</i> [patrie.]	fatigué, <i>fatigué de courir.</i>
incapable, <i>incapable d'une ac-</i> [tion si lâche.]	contrit, <i>contrit de ses forfaits.</i>
aise, <i>je suis bien aise de vous</i> [voir.]	enragé, <i>enragé d'être ainsi joué.</i>
ravi, <i>ravi de cette victoire.</i>	avide, <i>avide de gloire.</i>
joyeux, <i>joyeux d'être mis en li-</i> [berté.]	las, <i>las de ces poursuites.</i>
content, <i>content de sa condition.</i>	ennuyé, <i>ennuyé de vivre.</i>
mécontent, <i>mécontent de sa</i> [femme.]	libre, <i>libre de soins.</i>
comblé, <i>comblé d'honneurs.</i>	qualifié, <i>qualifié d'avrogne, &c.</i>
taxé, <i>taxé d'avarice.</i>	

where we must observe that some are followed by Nouns, and some by Verbs, and some by either, at pleasure.

Adjectives signifying fulness, emptiness, plenty or want, likewise require *de* before the next Noun or Verb: *Plein de gloire; un discours vuide de sens, &c.*

These Adjectives, significant of dimension, *baut, profond, épais, gros, large, long*, which come after the words of the measure of magnitude in English, come before them in French, and are attended by the Preposition *de*:—*Une colonne bauté de soixante piés (sixty feet high; literally, high by sixty feet.) le fossé est profond de vingt piés, et large de dix.*

NOTE.

These sentences may be expressed differently, in a manner more common as well as more elegant, by turning the Adjective into its Noun in French, with the word of the measure before, as in English, but so that both the word of the measure and that of the dimension may be preceded by the Preposition *de*:—*Un homme de six piés de hauteur: un fossé de vingt piés de profondeur.*

And if, instead of the Verb *être* (which is understood with the Relative *qui*, in the above sentences, before the Noun of measure) *avoir* be used, the sentence may be thus turned:—*Le fossé a vingt piés de profondeur et dix de largeur.*

It may not be improper to subjoin here the words of measure; which are,

une aune,	une coudée,	une lieüe,
une verge,	un empan,	un mille,
un pié,	un arpent,	un stade,
un pouce,	une perche,	une brasse,
une ligne,	un pas,	une toise.

5thly. The

5thly. The following Adjectives take à before the next Noun or Verb.

adroit, adroit à tous les exercices du corps.	désagréable, désagréable à ses compagnons.
bon, il n'est bon à rien.	comparable, comparable à cela.
beau, beau à voir.	agile, agile à la chasse.
laid, laid à voir.	alerte, alerte à tout.
agréable, agréable aux yeux.	habile, habile à la négociation.
ingénieux, ingénieux à se tirer d'affaire.	ardent, ardent au combat.
contraire, contraire à la santé.	âpre, âpre au jeu.
opposé, opposé à lui.	occupé, occupé à la guerre.
conforme, conforme à la vérité.	lent, lent au travail.
semblable, semblable à un certain.	nuisible, nuisible à la santé.
paréil, paréil à l'autre.	prompt, prompt aux affaires.
porté, porté à la vertu.	prêt, prêt à partir.
enclin, enclin à faire du mal.	sensible, sensible, insensible
adonné, adonné à la débauche.	insensible, aux affronts.
suget, suget à la débauche.	souple, souple au marteau.
propre, propre à tout.	aisé, facile, aisément, facile à dire.
exorable, } exorable	
inexorable, } inexorable } à la prière.	

In general all Adjectives signifying inclination, aptness, fitness and unfitness, advantage, disadvantage, due, submission, resistance and difficulty, profit and disprofit, pleasure and displeasure, require their regimen to be preceded by the Preposition à:—
Les honneurs étoient dus à ses rares mérites : Il est tout soumis à ses supérieurs, &c. &c.

6thly. Some Adjectives require no regimen at all, and of course no Preposition to follow them : Sage, vertueux, incurable, intrépide, &c.

Others, Chambaud observes, may be construed with or without a Noun :—C'est une femme insensible ; elle est insensible à l'amour, &c.

NOTE.

I am, however, rather of opinion, that their regimen is always understood, although not always expressed; which is discoverable, if we consider the example just cited; *c'est une femme insensible*: the mind naturally enquires, *a quoi?* If any particular passion suggests itself, we supply the answer by *that*: *à la colère, à l'amour, à la haine, &c.* but if not, we in general suppose—*qu'elle est insensible à tout*.

7thly. Adjectives are sometimes used without a Substantive in a kind of phrase, where they refer to a sentence following them, so as to give such sentence the force of their Substantive, of which they affirm something as its quality:—*Je trouve commode—de faire quelque chose*; *il parut plus court—de, &c.*—*on crut possible, facile même—de, &c.* (RAYNAL.) *Ils trouvèrent insupportable—de ne jamais changer de demeure*:—what was convenient—possible—easy—insupportable? *de faire telle ou telle chose—de ne jamais changer de demeure*:—which shews the relation between the Sentence and Adjective to be here the same as between the Substantive and Adjective in other cases. It is observable, that Adjectives thus used are always singular and masculine, which gender has, in this acceptation, the force of the neuter of the Latin; and they are always followed by *de*, because *que* is understood as an expletive (in the sense of *namely*) between the Adjective and Sentence, which always in that signification requires *de*: (*Ils trouvèrent insupportable [que] de ne jamais changer de demeure; [namely] never to change their habitation.*)

8thly. Adjectives are sometimes used for Substantives, i. e. in the sense of Substantives; and as such stand without any precedent or subsequent word of reference, and are accompanied by the Article:

Rien n'est beau que le vrai, le vrai seul est aimable;

Nous devons préférer l'utile à l'agréable:

le comique, le tragique d'une fable: un sensuel, &c.
&c.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives in general are compared by prefixing *plus* or *moins* before them for the comparative; and *le plus* or *le moins* before them for the superlative; *beau*, *plus beau*, *le plus beau*: but four change the word in the comparative, and add *le* to the new word for the superlative; three of them, however, may be compared regularly.

<i>petit</i> ,	<i>moindre</i> or <i>plus petit</i> ,	<i>le moindre</i> or <i>le plus petit</i> .
<i>mauvais</i> ,	<i>pire</i> or <i>plus mauvais</i> ,	<i>le pire</i> or <i>le plus mauvais</i> .
<i>méchant</i> ,	<i>pire</i> or <i>plus méchant</i> ,	<i>le pire</i> or <i>le plus méchant</i> .
<i>bon</i> ,	<i>meilleur</i> ,	<i>le meilleur</i> .

We have seen that some Adjectives come before, and some after, the Noun: whenever therefore the superlative Adjective is one of those which follow the Substantive, it requires the Article before its prefix (*plus* or *moins*,) although the Noun has it already with the Prepositions *de* or *à*; or, which is the same thing, although the Noun be in the genitive or dative case:—C'est la coutume *des peuples les plus barbares*: il a obéi au commandement *le plus injuste qu'on puisse faire*.

But repeat both the Preposition and the Article in this and similar instances; c'est une *des femmes des plus belles de Paris*: which is the same as—c'est une *des plus belles femmes de Paris*.

The Noun which follows the Superlative Adjective is always preceded by the Preposition *de*:

—Le plus savant homme *du monde*, (*in the world* :) la plus impertinente *des femmes*, (*of or among women*.)

When the Superlative is followed by a Verb, which is not in the future or conditional tense, that Verb must be subjunctive, preceded by *qui*, the relative Pronoun:—L'homme le plus savant *qui soit*: la plus belle personne *que j'aie jamais vue*, &c.

And if the Superlative is of an Adverb and not of an Adjective (since Adverbs are also compared by *plus* and *le plus*) then the Verb must be preceded by the Conjunction *que*, and requires, besides, some other word to stand as the Substantive of the Sentence:—Le plus soigneusement *qu'il se puisse*, or *qu'on puisse*.

The Particle Comparative *que*, answers to the English *than*:—Il est plus habile *que* son frère, he is more ingenious *than* his brother.

If *than* is followed by a Verb, it must be made in French by the Infinitive with the Particle *de* after *que*; or by the imperfect of the Indicative (or its compound) with the Conjunction *si* after *que*:—Il aime mieux demeurer à rien faire *que de travailler*, (*than work* :) il est plus heureux *que s'il regnoit*, or *que de regner*, (*he is happier than if he reigned, or than to reign*.)

And if the Verb which follows *than* in English, is not in, nor can be rendered by, the Infinitive, it must take in French the negative *ne* before it:—Il est plus habile *que je ne croyois*, (*than I thought*.)

N O T E.

This use of the Negative may easily be accounted for; il est plus habile *que je ne croyois*: his ingenuity (or address)

dress) exceeding my opinion, proves a defect or negation of my opinion, in that respect; for, *Je ne le crois pas si bâible que je le trouve.* — for this reason they introduce the Negative, which is not rendered into English, from the different genius of the two languages, of which the one delights in leaving nothing to be understood, the other a great deal.

Chambaud observes that, if there comes before the Verb a Conjunction governing it, the Negative is left out:—*Je le trouve à présent moins beau que quand je l'achetai.* He is however mistaken: the sentence is elliptical, and the Negative is understood, in that member which is left out: — the sentence at length is—*Je le trouve à présent moins beau [qu'il ne l'étoit] quand je l'achetai.* This is too evident to require farther illustration.

The simple Comparatives, *plus* and *moins*, meeting with a Number, are attended by the Preposition *de*:—*Il a plus de vingt ans,* (he is more than, or above twenty years.)

In comparative sentences, where we mean to establish a standard, by which to compute or define the comparison, the Substantive, or member applied to this purpose, is preceded by *de*, which has the force of *by*, sometimes expressed and sometimes understood, in English.—*Il est plus grand, que moi, de toute la tête,* (he is taller than I am by the whole head; or, as is said familiarly in English, he is a *head taller*;) *Nous sommes plus, d'à moitié, persuadés,* (we are more than half persuaded;) *Il est de beaucoup plus grand;* *Si vous êtes plus gros que lui, c'est de peu.*

N. O. T. E.

In general however we find *beaucoup* used without the *de*:—*Il est beaucoup plus grand;* although *de* in such cases is necessarily understood.

The Particles Comparative, *si* and *aussi*, which are always followed by *que* after the Adjective,

are englighed, *si* and *aussi* by *so*, before the Adjective, and *que* by *that* or *as*, after it, or by *as*, before and after:—*Je ne le croyois pas si brave qu'il est : Elle est aussi belle que sa soeur.*

Tant and *autant*, followed likewise by *que*, and signifying *as much as*, *so much as*, are construed with Verbs and Nouns, as *si* and *aussi* with Adjectives:—*Elle n'a pas tant d'esprit que sa soeur, mais elle a autant de vivacité : Je l'estime autant que votre frère : L'un est aussi savant que l'autre.*

Si is used in negative Propositions, and in affirmative also, where there is no comparison of equality made between two things; and *aussi* in affirmative Propositions, with such comparison:—*Il n'est rien de si doux que la liberté : Elle aime si viollement qu'elle en perd la raison : Le plaisir de l'étude est un plaisir aussi tranquille que celui des autres est inquiet.*

The Particles Comparative, *si* and *aussi*, *plus* and *le plus*, must be repeated before each Adjective or Adverb governed, as likewise *tant* and *autant* before each Noun and Verb, when there are many in the sentence:—*Il est si sage, si prudent, si éclairé, et si circonspect, qu'on peut en faire à lui confier un secret : Un jeune homme aussi sage, et aussi capable [que lui understood] et qui prend tant de peines, mérite qu'on le protège : Son amant est plus beau, plus jeune, et plus riche qu'elle.*

As, repeated with an Adverb between, is rendered into French by *aussi* and *que*, or *le plus* and *que*, with the Adverb between:—*Come as often*

as you can : Venez aussi souvent que vous pourrez ; or le plus souvent que vous pourrez.

These comparative expressions,—^a the more an hydropic drinks, ^b the more thirsty he is ; ^c the more I see her, ^d the more I hate her ; ^e the richer men are, ^f the happier they are ; or, men are so much ^g the more happy as they are ^h more rich ; ⁱ the poorer people are, ^j the less care they have, &c. ; are rendered into French by *plus* or *moins* beginning each part of the sentence, and followed by the Noun or Pronoun, which is the subject to the Verb ; then the Verb ; then the Adjective of the comparison, if there be any ; or even the Noun, if there is one governed by the Verb :—
^a *Plus un* hydropique boit, ^b *plus il* a soif ; ^c *plus je* la vois, ^d *plus je* la hais ; ^e *plus on* est riche, ^f *plus on* est heureux ; or, ^g *on* est d'autant ^h plus heureux qu'*on* est ⁱ plus riche ; ^j *plus on* est pauvre, ^k *moins on* a d'embarras.

N O T E.

Comparative sentences like the above are often by good authors joined by the Conjunction *et* :—*Plus on* est pauvre *et moins on* a d'embarras.

We have seen that Substantives in construction perform the parts of qualities, when used as predicates of the sentence : in the following instances we see them compared like Adjectives :—
Il n'y a pas de plus homme d'honneur que lui, (there is not a man of more honour than he is :) *Il est très homme d'bonneur* : *Le plus homme d'honneur que je connaisse* : *Qui de tous les Romains étoit le plus homme de bien* ; (ROLLIN, Belles Lettres, V. iv.) *Cinq hommes des plus gens de bien* ; (VER-

TOT, Rev. Rom. Liv. iv.) We also say in familiar conversation,—*Il est bête comme un cochon*: *Il est plus bête qu'un cochon*; *he is a greater beast*, &c.

CHAPTER III.

Of PRONOUNS.

1. Of Pronouns Personal.

FRENCH Pronouns Personal (besides the usual division of Personal Pronouns of all languages into those of the first, second, and third Persons) are distinguished also into *Conjunctive* and *Disjunctive*.

Conjunctives are such as are closely joined to, and connected with, the Verb, and generally preceding it, whether governing it as its Subject or Nominative Case, or governed by it as its object or end, i. e. in the Accusative or Dative.

Disjunctives are such as are totally disjoined and detached from the Verb, seldom preceding it, always independent of it, and frequently governed by Prepositions.

I. The Conjunctive Pronouns are,

Nom. Sing.	je	tu	il	elle	on	& N.	le
------------	----	----	----	------	----	------	----

Dat.	me	te	lui	lui	se	G. en
------	----	----	-----	-----	----	-------

Acc.	me	te	le	la	se	D. y.
------	----	----	----	----	----	-------

Nom. Plur.	nous	vous	ils	elles		
------------	------	------	-----	-------	--	--

Dat.	nous	vous	leur	leur		
------	------	------	------	------	--	--

Acc.	nous	vous	les	les		
------	------	------	-----	-----	--	--

2. The

2. The Disjunctive Pronouns are,

Nom. Sing.	<i>moi</i>	<i>toi</i>	<i>lui</i>	<i>elle</i>	<i>soi</i>
Gen.	<i>de moi</i>	<i>de toi</i>	<i>de lui</i>	<i>d'elle</i>	<i>de soi</i>
Dat.	<i>moi, à moi</i>	<i>toi, à toi</i>	<i>à lui</i>	<i>à elle</i>	<i>à soi</i>
Acc.	<i>moi</i>	<i>toi</i>	<i>lui</i>	<i>elle</i>	<i>soi.</i>

Nom. Plur.	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>eux</i>	<i>elles</i>	
Gen.	<i>de nous</i>	<i>de vous</i>	<i>d'eux</i>	<i>d'elles</i>	
Dat.	<i>nous, à nous</i>	<i>vous, à vous</i>	<i>à eux</i>	<i>à elles</i>	
Acc.	<i>nous</i>	<i>vous</i>	<i>eux</i>	<i>elles.</i>	

The Personal Conjunctives *je, nous, tu, vous, il, elle, ils, elles*, come before the Verb, as its Subject or Nominative Case, either immediately, as *je dis*, or with one or more Pronouns, or the Negative *ne*, between:—*Je vous dis*: *Je ne vous dis pas.* But they will not admit of any Adverb or other word between them and the Verb, as in English: therefore we do not say,—*Je toujours vois*, but, *Je vois toujours*, &c.

N O T E.

Only in certain forms the word *soussigné*, and the title and quality of the person that speaks, is put between the Conjunctive and Verb:—*Je soussigné déclare*; *Je, Jean Smith, Docteur en Médecine, certifie.*

EXCEPTIONS to the Rule of the NOMINATIVE PRONOUN preceding the VERB.

The same Personal Conjunctives may come after their Verbs in the following cases:

1st. After these six Verbs, *dire, répondre, repliquer, continuer, poursuivre, and s'écrier*, used parenthetically, as is sometimes practised in English with the Verb *to say*:—*Vous étudiez, dites-vous*; *Vous voyez, répondit-il*, or *s'écria-t-il*, *l'état où nous sommes réduits*, &c.

2dly. With the Preterite Subjunctive of *devoir*, and the Present and Preterite Subjunctive of *pouvoir*:—*Qu'as-tu me condamné*; *pouvez-vous and pourrez-vous vivre heureux*.

36 A System of FRENCH SYNTAX.

And in phrases like the following:—*Lorsqu'il avoit reçu une chose, ne valut-elle qu'un sou.* (MONTESQUIEU.)

3dly. After these Conjunctions, *aussi*, *aussi*, *peut-être*, *du moins*, *au moins*, *en vain*, and *à peine*:—as. *Aussi mérite-t-il d'être avancé*; or, *aussi mérite-t-il*, &c. *Du moins devriez-vous m'en avertir*: *En vain chante-t-il des excuses*: *Peut-être s'imaginent-ils*; *à peine eut-il parlé que*, &c.

But observe, that in most of these cases the transposition of the Pronoun is only an elegance, and not a law of Grammar: for we may also say,—*Aussi il mérite d'être avancé*; and *du moins vous devriez m'en avertir*, &c.—and *diffiez-vous me condamner*, is used for *quand vous devriez me condamner*; which is equally as proper: *poussiez-vous être content*, for *je souhaitte que vous fayez l'autre*; and *ne valut-elle*, &c. for *quoiqu'elle ne valut*, &c. *mais lorsque cela*

When a Noun and a Pronoun, or many Nouns and Pronouns, meet together with the Verb, as its *virtual Subject*, it must besides have, for its *immediate grammatical Subject* or *Nominative Case*, a Conjunctive of the Plural Number, comprehending in its signification the other Pronouns, which are to be put in apposition (i. e. in the same Case) with it, must be disjunctive, and may come (as well as the Nouns connected with them) either before or after the Verb:—*Lui et moi, nous apprenons le François*; or, *nous apprenons le François, lui et moi*: *Mon frère, ma soeur, ma cousine et moi, nous allâmes hier à la comédie*; or, *nous allâmes hier à la comédie, mon frère, ma soeur, ma cousine et moi*: *Nous sommes contents, lui et moi*; *lui et moi, nous sommes contents*; or, *je suis content, et lui aussi*.

The Disjunctives *moi*, *lui*, *toi*, as likewise *nous* and *vous*, (which are both conjunctive and disjunctive) are used together with a cognate Conjunctive (if the Verb be not in the Infinitive

or Imperative Mood) ^b when we wish to mark more strikingly the person spoken of; ^b and to lay particular stress or emphasis on what is said, especially with the Infinitive, intimating a sort of reproach to those we speak to, for attributing such and such things to the person in question; ^c they are also used with the Imperative in familiar conversation: —^a *Vous dites cela, et moi je l'ai vu;* (*You say that, and I, for my part, have seen it:*) *Lui, il soutient cela;* or, *il soutient cela, lui;* (*Yes, 'tis he who maintains that; he does maintain it:*) *Lui, il soutient cela?* or, *il soutient cela, lui?* (*Does he maintain that?*)—^b *Mais faire cela!* (*Should I, or could I, do that!*) *Me soupçonner de cela, moi!* (*Is it possible that I, of all people in the world, could be suspected of that!*)—^c *Faites moi, or, faites nous cela, comme il faut;* (*Do me that, make us that, &c. i. e. for me, for us.*)

NOTE.

Though the Disjunctives of the Second, and of the First Person (*moi, moi*) can never be construed as the Subject or Nominative Case to a Verb, without another Pronominal Conjunctive; yet, when the Disjunctives are put before the Verb, and the last of them is a Pronoun of the Third Person (*lui* or *aut*) the Conjunctive is sometimes left out, and sometimes expressed, before the Verb which follows, and sometimes it is indifferent to express it or not. As these contingencies cannot easily be defined by a positive rule, it may perhaps be sufficient to record the instances wherein they occur, taking care to observe, previously, that they are almost always confined to the free and familiar style of conversation.

It is not customary to say.—*Mon frère et lui, ils* sont arrivés, but, *mon frère et lui* sont arrivés; nor are we authorized to say, *Je demeure, et lui* part, but, *Je demeure et lui*, *il* part; but it is indifferent to say, *Je demeurai et lui*.

*Il s'en alla, or Je demeurai et *il*, il s'en alla.* [We must not, however, consider these differences as wholly capricious; for, perhaps, the following reasons may in some measure account for them. As, in the first instance, the Noun (*mon frère*) is of the Third Person, as well as *il*, a Conjunctive is not necessary to justify the use of a Verb of the Third Person; but, in the second, where the former Nominative (*je*) is of the First Person, and governs a Verb of the First Person, a Pronoun, qualified with every grammatical requisite, seems necessary to render the change of the second Verb to the Third Person, proper: which may, however, be dispensed with in the last instance, where the second Verb being reflected, is naturally accompanied with a Pronoun of the Third Person.] It is however best, as the surest method, to express the Conjunctive first, and subjoin the Noun and Disjunctive Pronouns, whenever we are in a doubt concerning the addition or omission of the Conjunctive, if harmony and the nature of the sentence will admit of it, even in familiar conversation:—*Nous apprenons le François, *lui* et *moi* : Ils sont arrivés, mon frère et *lui*.*

Under the following circumstances the Disjunctives *lui* and *eux* may, in a regular speech, be the subject of, and come before, the Verb, without any Conjunctive. 1st. When the Disjunctive is attended by the Adjective *seul*:—*Plus je vis avec le cacique & sa soeur, plus j'ai de peine à me persuader qu'ils soient de cette nation : Eux seuls connoissent la vertu et la respectent.* 2dly. Or it must be separated from its Verb by another incidental Sentence joined to it by means of a Relative or Gerund:—*Lui, qui ne savoit pas qu'ils eroient reconciliez, fut fort surpris de les voir ensemble : Eux, voyant que la pluralité des suffrages l'emporteroit, commencèrent par protester.* 3dly. Or the sentences (or members of the sentence) wherein they are used, must relate the particulars of some fact (declared in general in the former sentence or member) as distributed among the agents of it:—*Les deux frères et le cousin ont commis le meurtre ; eux ont lié l'homme, et *lui* l'a assommé.*

[The following are two short rules of Pere Buffier on the same subject:—*On peut se dispenser d'ajouter le conjoint après les disjoints *lui*, *eux*, &c. si ces disjoints ; 1°. ne sont pas trop éloignés du Verb ; *lui* qui plaisaitoit, n'écouta pas ! 2°. S'ils se trouvent opposés à un autre Nominatif, nous entrammes,*

entrâmes, et *lui* se retira. (Gram. Françoise, p. 194.) we see by the first of these rules, that Buffier does not think that any but a *short* sentence can be admitted between the Verb and Disjunctive:—and with respect to the second, I think that strictly speaking, it should be confined to those cases where the Disjunctive is followed by a reflected Verb, for the reason given in the beginning of this note, unless the first Verb is in the Third Person also:—Tandis que l'armée s'arrêta, *eux* prirent le devant.

The Conjunctives of the Third Person, of both Genders (*il*, *elle*, *ils*, *elles*) besides being applied to rational creatures, are used with respect to things irrational and inanimate also: which Pronouns are englisched by *it* in the Singular, and by *they* for the Plural. Thus,

Il a tree, *elle* porte beaucoup de fruit.
Speaking of an apple, we say *elle* n'est pas mûre.
of a horse, say *il* boîte.
a hen, *elle* ne pond plus.

Verbs are very often used impersonally with the Pronoun *il*, which is generally rendered into English by *it* or *there*:—*Il* arriva que; *il* baptisa, &c. It is also sometimes used before Verbs, neuter and reflected, followed by another subject besides, to which the Verb has a natural and unavoidable reference, in order to ascertain the subject of whom its energy is affirmed:—*Il* est arrivé un accident (i. e. un accident est arrivé); *il* s'y trouva des gens qui (i. e. des gens s'y trouverent qui); *il* viendra tantôt quelqu'un (i. e. quelqu'un viendra tantôt).

The same thing sometimes occurs when the sentence is made interrogative:—est *il* arrivé quelque accident? viendra-t-il du monde? or quelqu'un? but in this last case the Noun frequently

40 A System of FRENCH SYNTAX.

comes first, as we shall see in the section upon questions.

N O T E. This Note has been added to the present Note, as it appears to be more appropriate to the subject of the present Note than to that of the preceding Note.

Observe, that in these impersonal ways of speaking, the Noun which follows the Verb requires before it the Particle *de* or *en*, or some Pronoun or Adjective indeterminate, such as *quelqu'un*, *divers*, *certain*, and never takes the Article separated from the limiting Particle *le*;—for we never say impersonally, *il est arrivé l'homme que vous attendiez* (i. e. to imply, *there is arrived the man, &c.*) for such a sentence would signify *he is arrived [namely] the man, &c.* where the Verb is personal, and *il* refers to *l'homme*.

We shall have occasion to treat more fully of this Pronoun by and by.

The Genitive of Pronouns Personal cannot, strictly speaking, be used after a Noun in the Genitive Case, to which it is joined by the Conjunction *et*; but a pronominal Adjective, of correspondent signification, must be used in its place: therefore, instead of saying,—*C'est le sentiment de mon frère et de moi*, it is better to say,—*c'est le sentiment de mon frère et le mien*; or to take this turn,—*c'est mon sentiment et celui de mon frère*.

In the following expressions, however, the Pronoun Personal is very properly used in the Genitive:—*Pour l'amour de moi*; *pour l'amour de lui*, *d'elle*, *d'eux*, &c. *à cause de moi*, *en dépit de moi*, &c.

Or, when *même* is joined to the Pronoun Personal:—*Je ne veux pas être homicide de moi-même*; *il ne veut pas être homicide de lui-même*; *l'amour de soi-même*, (and not, *l'amour de soi*, for *l'amour propre*).

But we say,—Pour *mon* plaisir, pour *son* plaisir, and not, pour le plaisir de moi, de lui.

N O T E.

Buffier observes, that the reason why we say,—Pour l'amour de moi, and pour ma satisfaction, pour mon plaisir, is, because pour mon amour would admit of a double construction, implying either the love I bear for another, or that another has for me:—(So we say,—Un portrait de moi, to signify a portrait drawn by me, and not, my portrait, which implies rather a portrait drawn to represent my person.) But as the two other expressions are not equivocal, the Possessive Pronoun is used in preference to the Personal Pronoun.

When the Verb governs a Pronoun Personal as its *objet*, it must be Conjunctive:—*Je le vois*, (not, *je lui vois*). As also when it governs it as its *ende*:—*Je lui parle*, (not, *je à lui parle*, or *je parle à lui*).

N O T E.

The Pronoun annexed to the Verb Substantive objectively, is Disjunctive:—C'est moi ; c'est *toi*, &c. « mal, ils ont un caractère, ils sont rares. » (Thouars, Essai sur les éloges;) [they are distinguished, by a peculiar character, from all others, both in their good and bad qualities; in every thing they are themselves.]

When the Verb governs a Pronoun Personal, Conjunctive, it must come between the Subject and the Verb:—*Je le vois*; *vous lui parlez*.

EXCEPTIONS

concerning the Species and Position of the PRONOUNS PERSONAL.

When the Verb is in the Imperative Mood, without a Negation, the Pronoun comes last; and if it is of the First or Second Person, and in the Dative case, the Disjunctives *moi* and *toi* are used instead of the Conjunctives *me* and *te*:

—Portez-

—Portez-*le*, voyez-*la*, parlez-*lui*, dites-*moi*, &c.—although we say with the Pronoun *en*, donnez *m'en* (for donnez *me en*); and with a Negation, *ne me parlez pas*, voyons-*les*, *ne les voyons pas*; and if two Imperatives come together, with a Conjunction Copulative, the latter will have the Pronoun come before it:—Voyez-*la*, et la consolez; which is much better and more elegant than *voyez-la et consolez-la*.

With the Verbs *être* (in the sense of *appartenir*), *avoir*, *penser*, *songer*, *viser* (respecting a person and not a thing,) *aller*, *venir*, *courir*, *accourir*, *boire*; as likewise with reciprocal Verbs, the Pronoun governed in the Dative must be Disjunctive, and must follow them, being in itself under the immediate government of the Preposition *à*:—Ce livre est à moi; vous en avez un à lui (i. e. qui est à lui,) je songe, or, je pense, à vous; il vise à eux; je vais à vous; elle boit à vous; nous nous faisons à vous; cela s'adresse à moi, &c.

In general, if there be more than one Dative Pronoun Personal, governed by the Verb, the first Pronoun only must be Conjunctive, and the others Disjunctive, which must come after the Verb:—On me parle aussi bien qu'à vous et à eux.—But when two Dative Pronouns Personal are used as in opposition or contradistinction to each other, and also when they rather denote the order in which a thing must be done, they must both be Disjunctive, and come after the Verb:—Je parle à lui, et non à eux; (or, c'est à lui que je parle, et non pas à eux;) donnez à lui d'abord, ensuite à elle, puis aux autres, &c.]

Disjunctive Pronouns are always used in answer to questions, and after Prepositions:—Qui est-ce qui dit cela? *lui* et *eux*, (or, *c'est lui*, ce sont eux) pour moi, après lui, devant elle, &c.

* *Ne, plus, and point,* are Particles of Negation answering to the English *not*. The French

* The Negatives are here considered only with respect to their position, which was necessary to be mentioned here, in order to ascertain the arrangement of the sentence in general.

put *ne*, before the Verb, and *pas* or *point*, after it, if the Tense is simple; and between the Auxiliary and Participle, if it is compound. *Ne* must always come immediately after the word which expresses the subject, either a Noun or a Pronoun:—*Je ne parle pas*; *vous ne dites point*; *l'homme n'est pas venu*.

EXCEPTIONS.

Except, 1st. When the Verb is at the Second Person of the Imperative; in which case *ne*, which always comes before the Verb, comes then even before the Pronoun, which, if the Verb is reciprocal, is joined to it; but *pas* always comes after the Verb:—*Ne faites pas cela*; *ne vous fâchez pas*.

2dly. In sentences of interrogation:—*Ns fait-je pas ce que vous me dites?*

3dly. On such occasions where the Pronouns Consecutive, governing the Verb, come after it. (See p. 36.)—*Aussi ne pretend-il pas cela*, &c.

When the Verb is attended by two Pronouns Personal; viz. one in the Accusative, and another in the Dative, the Pronoun of the Dative must come before that of the Accusative:—*Je vous le dis*, (I tell it to you); *on me la donne*, (they give it to me).

EXCEPTIONS.

Except, only, when the Dative Pronoun is of the Third Person, (*lus* or *leur*); or when the Verb is at the Imperative, for then the Pronoun of the Accusative comes before that of the Dative:—*Vous le lui dites*; *il la leur refuse*;

donnez le moi, whereas we should say in the Indicative, *D. A.*
on me le donne.

Y and

44 A System of FRENCH SYNTAX.

y and *en* come after the other Pronouns, and immediately before the Verb:—*Je vous les y enverrai*, (I will send them to you there); *je ne vous en parle pas*, (I do not speak to you of it, or of them).

And where *en* and *y* meet together, *y* comes before *en*:—*Je vous y en enverrai*, (I will send you some there); *je ne vous y en ferai pas tenir*, I will remit you none [money] there.

The Pronouns governed of the Verb, come after it (but in the same order as when they come before it) when the Verb is in the Second Person, or First Person Plural of the Imperative, without a Negative:—*Fions-nous y*, *donnez lui en*; *menez les y*; *menez l'y*; *menez nous y*; *apartez nous-y-en*.

But with a Pronoun of the First Person singular, there is a deviation from the rule; for, instead of *menez moi y*, we say, *menez y-moi*.
of *envoyez moi y*, for the sake of *envoyez y-moi*.
saying, *portez moi y*, of harmony, *portez y-moi*.

Whereas we say, in the Third Persons of the Imperative.—*Qu'ils le fassent*; *qu'ils lui en parlent*. And in the other Persons with a Negative:—*Ne nous y fions pas*; *ne lui en donnez pas*.

The following table will illustrate, by comparison, the difference in the Position of the Pronouns, with respect to the Verb:

avant la fin de la ligne au bas de la page. With

With the Negative, and without aux.

{ ne nous y faisons pas.
ne lui en donnez pas.
ne les y menez pas.
ne l'y menez pas.

{ ne nous y menez pas.
ne m'y menez pas,
ne m'y envoyez pas.

ne m'y portez pas.

ne nous y emportez pas.

{ sans nous y.
donnez *pas* en.
menez *les* y.
menez l'y.

{ menez *moi* y.
envoyez y *moi*.

portez y *moi*.

emportez nous y *moi*.

In sentences of interrogation, the Nominative Pronoun also comes after the Verb;—*Suis-je?* *fais-je?* which we shall see more particularly, in treating of Questions.

The Pronouns Conjunctive, whether governing, or governed of, the Verb, i. e. whether used as Subjects or Objects to it, are sometimes repeated, and sometimes not.

The Conjunctives, *je*, *tu*, *nous*, *vous*, are repeated before each Verb, when the Verbs are in different Tenses:—*Je dis et je dirai toujours*; *nous avons parlé, et nous parlerons encore pour lui*. But when the Tenses are alike, it is indifferent to repeat them or not:—*Je pense et dis que*;—*or, je pense et je dis que—nous l'avons vu et touché*.

The Pronouns of the Third Person, *il*, *elle*, *ils*, *elles*, need not be repeated in common conversation, though the Tenses vary:—*Il n'a jamais rien valu, et ne vaudra jamais rien*.

All Conjunctives are repeated, when in the same sentence there is a transition made from the Affirmative to the Negative, or from the Negative to the Affirmative; as likewise when the second

second Verb is preceded by one of these Conjunctions, *mais*, *même*, *cependant*, *néanmoins*, *ainsi*, *aussi*, *ou*, or *que*, standing for a Conjunction:—*Il l'aime, et si ne veut pas en convenir*: *Il le dit, mais il ne le pense pas*: *Elle n'en croit rien, et cependant elle ne veut pas l'épouser*: *Il le fait, et même il s'en vante*: *Nous le trouverons, ou nous ne le trouverons pas*: *Lorsque vous ferez votre devoir et que vous vous comporterez bien*, (where *que* has the force of *lorsque*.)

All Conjunctives, governed, are repeated before their Verbs:—*Il me prie, et me conjure*; *je vous dis, et vous déclare*, &c.

E X C E P T I O N S.

Except when the Verb is of the same signification with, or composed of, the first, or only denotes a repetition of the action:—*Il ne fait que vous dire et redire la même chose*: *Elle le fait et défait et refait quand bon lui semble*.

§. Concerning the several Methods of asking QUESTIONS.

There are five different methods of asking questions in French.

1st. With the Pronouns Interrogative *qui* and *lequel*:—*Qui croit cela?* *Lequel des deux vous a plus?*

2dly. With the pronominal Adjective *quel*, and the Noun of the subject of the question preceding the Verb, as in the declarative form:—*Quel homme seroit assez hardi pour—?*

3dly. With a Pronoun Personal, or the Pronoun Demonstrative *ce*, for the subject of the question;

question, coming after the Verb, if the Tense be simple, and between the Auxiliary and Participle, if it be compound:—*Est-ce votre livre?*
L'avez-vous fait? 4thly. With a Noun or Pronoun Indeterminate; in which case that Noun or Pronoun begins the sentence, followed by the Verb, to which is annexed the Conjugative *il* or *elle*, *ils* or *elles*, agreeing in Number and Gender with the Subject; and if the Tense is compound, the Participle follows the Personal Pronoun, as the Auxiliary precedes it, in the place of the Verb of the Participle, when the Tense is simple:—
L'homme, vient-il? (Does the man come?) *La femme est-elle venue?* *Quelqu'un fait-il ce que vous faites?* *Personne ne fait-il cela?*

5thly. If the Verb of the question is reciprocal, the sentence begins with the Pronoun, which is the sign of the reciprocation, if the subject is expressed by a Pronoun; or, if by a Noun, with that Noun the Reciprocal Pronoun following; and in both cases, a Nominative Pronoun is subjoined to the Verb, under the regulations specified in the fourth method of asking questions:—
Vous souvenez-vous de cela? *Les matelots se sont ils enrichis dans cette expédition?* (And if the Verb ends with a vowel, and the Pronoun begins with one, *-t-* is inserted between two hyphens, to avoid the hiatus: therefore write and pronounce, *aime-t-il?* &c.)

The Pronouns attending on the Verb, keep the same order in the interrogative form, as in the declarative:—*Le ferai-je?* *Le lui direz-vous?*

Me

*Me le commandez-vous ? Y en porterons-nous ?
Ne leur y en a-t-il envoyé pas ?*

NOTE.

It is usual in French, among polite, well-bred people, and in speaking to one in a higher station, or to whom we wish to shew particular respect, to use the Third Person of the Pronoun, instead of the Second :—Comment se porte Monsieur? (for, comment vous-portez-vous?) Sa Majesté l'ordonne-t-elle?

It has been before said, that when the question is asked with a Pronoun Personal of the First Person, that Pronoun comes after the Verb :—Suis-je? Entends-je?—in addition to which we must observe, 1. That in Verbs of the First Conjugation, wherein the First Person ends in *s*, not sounded, that's mute is changed into é acute, before the Pronoun, which ends also in *s*, not sounded : *as*, Aime-je? (for, Aime-je?) &c. 2. That a question cannot be asked in this manner with some Verbs, especially with these five, *mentir, perdre, rompre, sentir, dormir*; therefore in the case of these Verbs, the question must be stated in a different manner :—Est-ce que je mens? Croire-vous que je mente? Trouver-vous que je rompe cela comme il faut? &c.

The method of asking questions by *est-ce que*, is of great use in French; but it serves less to seek, simply, information concerning any thing, than to assure others, that we do not require to be informed of it, or that the case is not as they think; as also to intimate a surprize at an unexpected event, or a fear of any future evil. When I say,—*Plut-il?* I only want to know whether it rains or not; but when I say,—*Est-ce qu'il pleut?* I besides shew my surprize at it; It don't rain, does it? When I say,—*A-t-il du jugement?* I merely enquire about the state of his judgement; but when I say,—*Est-ce qu'il a du jugement?* I intimate that I know he has no judgment,

ment, or at least doubt of it, and wonder that he should be supposed to have any. Again, when I say,—*Viendra-t-il?* I only put a plain question; but when I ask,—*Est-ce qu'il viendra?* I shew a surprize at, or fear of, his coming. Sometimes this interrogative expression amounts to the same thing as an absolute negation.—*Est-ce que je joue?* implies, *Je ne joue point*; and may be properly englished, *Who games? not I.*

On the contrary, the same expression, with a negative (*n'est ce pas que*) signifies always that we take that for certain, which is the subject of the question, and want only the concurrence of other men's opinions, as a confirmation of our own. *N'est ce pas*, it is to be observed, may equally as well begin or end the sentence; with this difference, that when it begins the sentence, it is always followed by the Conjunction *que*, connecting it with the rest of the sentence:—*N'est ce pas qu'il pleut?* or, *il pleut, n'est-ce pas?* The following comparative view of these distinctions will illustrate them in the clearest manner:

Simple Interrogation, for the sake of information.	Interrogation, implying doubt, disbelief, and surprize.	Interrogation, implying conviction and belief.
<i>Pleut-il?</i>	<i>Est-ce qu'il pleut?</i>	<i>N'est-ce pas qu'il pleut? or, il pleut, n'est-ce pas?</i>

§. Particular Observations upon the Construction
of the PRONOUNS PERSONAL of the THIRD
PERSON.

The Pronouns Personal of the Third Person, either governing, or being governed of, a Verb, are indifferently used, as has been already observed, for all kinds of substances rational and irrational, animate and inanimate.

But when a question is put, respecting *irrational* and *inanimate* objects, the Pronoun which follows the Verb *être*, which may occur in the answer, must be the Conjunctive supplying Pronoun *le*, (of which particularly hereafter :)—*Est-ce-là la montagne dont vous parliez ? ce l'est,* (not, *c'est elle :*) *Est-ce là votre livre ? ce l'est,* (not, *c'est lui.*)

Whereas if the question concern *rational* creatures, the Pronoun Personal is used :—*Sont-ce là vos gens ? ce sont eux : Est-ce-là la dame dont vous m'avez parlé ? c'est elle.*

N O T E.

And here I cannot help making mention of an instance in which, contrary to the last rule, the Pronoun Personal cannot be used, although the subject of the question is a rational creature. Seeing a man and a woman whom you suppose that you know, you accost them thus :—*êtes-vous Monsieur un tel ? Madame une telle ?* They must answer you,—*Je /s suis ; Je /a suis :* for should they say, *Je suis lui, Je suis elle*, then the Personal Pronouns of the First and Third Person would be applied to the same person, at one and the same time, and by the same person, which would be a grammatical solecism, and consequently improper.

Il, elle, ils, elles, are used throughout all their Cases, when objects are personified:—*L'amour propre est captieux*: Ce'st *lui* qui nous séduit: *De lui viennent la plupart de nos maux*; & c'est trop souvent à *lui* qu'il faut s'en prendre.

La vertu est précieuse: *D'elle* seule nous devons attendre de véritables biens: C'est à *elle* que nous devons notre vraie gloire; & c'est pour *elle* qu'il faut sacrifier tout ce que ce monde a de plus agréable, & de plus chatoüillant pour les sens.

It is upon the same principle that we must account for the following differences of expression with respect to the Pronouns, although the subject of our discourse be the same. In speaking of a sword, I say,—*Je lui dois la vie*: and again, speaking of the same sword, I say,—*J'y ferai mettre une nouvelle garde*. Mentioning mineral waters, I say,—*Je leur suis redévable de ma santé*: and again, referring to them,—*On y a fait de beaux réservoirs*. Whence this change of Pronouns? It is because that when I speak of the sword as having saved my life, and of the waters as having given me health, I attribute to them energy and action, and therefore virtually personify them; whereas, in observing of the sword, that I shall have it new mounted, and of the waters, that they are enclosed in a fine reservoir, I reduce them to their passive, inanimate condition: in the first instance therefore, the Personal Pronoun is used with propriety; while on the contrary, in the second, the Pronoun applicable to things without life can alone be inserted.

The Conjunctives *lui* and *leur* are said of ani-

mated substances, which are nevertheless *irrational*, such as *borses*, *birds*, &c.

Speaking *an horse* { we { donnez *lui* à manger,
of { birds { say { coupez-leur les ailes.

But *lui* and *leur*, governed by a Preposition, can never be said of irrational and inanimate substances: from hence observe,

That in those cases where *lui*, *elle*, *leur*, &c. relating to irrational and inanimate substances, would be governed by a Preposition, if they could be used with propriety, to remove the difficulty we must use an Adverb, the signification of which comprehends, and answers to, that of the Preposition and Pronoun, which are therefore omitted: thus, instead of saying,

- a. Prenez ce cheval et montez *sur lui*,
- b. Ouvrez ce cabinet & mettez vous *dans lui*,
- c. On étoit *autour de lui* or *d'elle*, (speaking of a tree or mountain)
- d. D'abord on plaça la poutre et *après elle* une barre de fer,—say,
- a. _____ et montez *dessus*,
- b. _____ et mettez-vous *dedans*,
- c. On étoit *à l'entour*,
- d. _____ et *ensuite* une barre de fer.

N O T E.

The following words being both Prepositions and Adverbs, and being the one or the other, as they are or are not, followed by a Noun or Pronoun, when any of them meet with a Pronoun which cannot properly refer to inanimate things, we have only to suppress such Pronoun, and the word which was a Preposition becomes an Adverb; whereby the error is entirely avoided. It is just necessary to premise, that some of these words require, as Prepositions,

tions, *de* to come between them and the Pronoun, which, in their adverbial use, is omitted, together with the Pronoun.

à côté	au près	dessous	au travers, for
à couvert	avec	au dessous	à travers de
à l'abri	dessus	par dessous	tout contre
en deca	au dessus	loin	tout auprès
audelà	par dessus	proche, for	vis-à-vis
		près de	aux environs.

Therefore, as, speaking of a brute or a tree, we cannot say, *mettez-vous vis-à-vis de lui*, we drop the *de* and the Pronoun, and say, *mettez-vous vis-à-vis*, and fully express thereby the meaning intended.

§. Of the Use and Construction of the general and indeterminate PRONOUN On.

This Pronoun is called *general* and *indeterminate*, because it is always used in a vague, unspecified sense, when we mean to speak, without alluding to any one particular person, of men in general.

N O T E.

The author of the *Grammaire raisonnée* supposes *on* to be a corruption of *homme*; *on étudie*, *on joue*, &c. amounting to the same as *homme étudie*, *homme joue*: and he founds his conjecture on the fact of *homme* [or *man*] being in some instances used in Italian, German, and English, in the sense of *on*; and on the circumstance of *on* taking sometimes the Article *le*, with the apostrophe [*l'on*] as *homme* would: thus, he says, we say, *l'on étudie*, *l'on joue*, &c. because people formerly said, *l'homme étudie*, *l'homme joue*, &c. P. 79.

On is rendered into English variously:—*On croiroit*, [one would think;] *on dit*, [they, the world, people, men, say;] *on apprend*, [we learn.]

But *on* is more generally, and better rendered, by converting the Verb from the Active Voice into the Passive:—*On croit*, [*it is thought*;] *on tint hier un conseil à Whitehall*; *on en doit tenir un*, *demain, au palais de St. James*; [*a council was held yesterday, &c.*; *one is to be held to-morrow, &c.*] Where observe, that the Case after the Verb *in French*, is made the Case before the Verb *in English*; as also, that the *active French Verb* corresponds with the *passive English one*:—*On tint un conseil*; *a council was held*.

L'on is sometimes used for *on*, for the sake of harmony, when two vowels would otherwise disagreeably clash, and produce an ungrateful sound, or confuse by any means the sense. The ear must, on such occasions, be consulted; but in general *on* is better than *l'on*, and when it once occurs in a sentence, must continue throughout it, as often as repeated, without the Article [*le*] being prefixed.

N O T E.

French authors often use *on* or *nous*, when they mention themselves, as being more modest than *je*; *on* leaving it undetermined who is alluded to, and *nous* implying that they are not singular in their opinion, and therefore not self-sufficient.

On has for its relations *soi, de soi, a soi, se.*

Soi is used in sentences, the Subject whereof is a Noun, taken in an universal, indefinite sense, or a Pronoun indeterminate: in such cases it is used (but rarely) as a *Nominative*, put in opposition with the *Subject* of the Verb, and requiring *même* to be joined to it: it occurs however frequently as an *Objet*, and without the addition of *même*:—*Chacun doit veiller soi même à ses af-*
faires:

faires :—L'homme n'aime que *soi* :—Chacun agit pour *soi* :—Qui n'est bon que pour *soi*, n'est pas digne de vivre.

Soi is especially applicable to *inanimate* substances ; as the Pronoun *lui*, except in some few cases, is confined to *animate* substances :—Le vice est odieux de *soi* ;—la terre est de *soi* fertile.—Although, with *Nouns Feminine*, we may use *elle* with as much propriety as *soi* :—La terre renferme en *soi*, or en *elle* toutes les semences.

Soi, however, as we have just now seen, is applied to rational creatures, when they are spoken of *indefinitely* ; but if the Noun be taken in a particular definite sense, *lui* is used instead of *soi* :—C'est un homme qui n'est bon que pour *lui*, et qui parle de *lui* sans cesse.

EXCEPT in some sentences like the following, where *soi* refers to something *external*, with respect to the person to whom it is applied :—Il ne porte jamais d'argent *sur soi*.

Se, the Accusative from *on*, is chiefly used with Verbs reflected, and with Verbs impersonal :—*Se repentir* [to repent one's self;] il s'agit [the point is.]

Soi may be used in the Plural, with a Preposition, in reference to *inanimate* things :—Ces choses sont bonnes de *soi* ;—but if the Pronoun relates to *animate* things, *eux mêmes*, *elles mêmes*, are used in its place.

Of *Même*.

Même is a kind of Pronominal word, joined to Pronouns Personal Disjunctive, and Nouns, and

communicating a particular force or emphasis to the word to which it is added:—*Moi-même* (*myself*;) *nous-mêmes* (*ourselves*;) *la vertu même* (*virtue itself*,) &c.

NOTE.

Même is besides an Adjective, signifying *the same*, with the Article; thus,—*Le même*, *la même*, *les mêmes*, and relating to some Noun expressed or understood. *Même* is also an Adverb, answering to *even*, *also*, *nay*:—*Je crois même qu'on lui a fait son procès*, I even (or, nay!) believe that he has been tried. When *même* is an Adverb, it is sometimes spelt with an *s* at the end of it, for the sake of rendering the sentence more harmonious; but the Adverb *de même* is always spelt without an *s*.

§. Of the Use and Construction of the CONJUNCTIVE SUPPLYING PRONOUN *le*.

This Pronoun is called *Conjunctive*, from its being always *joined* (like the Pronouns Personal Conjunctive) to the Verb. It not only supplies the place of Nouns, (in which it performs an office common to all Pronouns properly so called) but it stands for whole sentences; which accounts for its being also called the *Supplying Pronoun*.

Le, and its relations *en* and *y*, are used instead of the Pronouns *lui*, *elle*, *eux*, *de lui*, *d'elle*, *d'eux*, *d'elles*, *à lui*, *à elle*, *à eux*, *à elles*, (which, as has been already observed, cannot always be said of irrational and inanimate substances) and relate to the *person*, *thing*, or *place*, spoken of.

En has always, mediately or immediately, the force of the Genitive or Ablative Case.

Y, of the Dative.

They

They are both referable to the Singular as well as the Plural Number, and to the Masculine as well as the Feminine Gender.

Vous êtes le maître de le faire, & moi je ne le suis pas, (for, *je ne suis pas le maître, &c.*)

Ils sont heureux & nous ne le sommes pas, (for, *nous ne sommes pas heureux.*)

Newton vous plaît, vous en parlez toujours, (for, *de Newton.*)

Ce sont des orgueilleuses, ne m'en parlez pas, (for, *de ces orgueilleuses.*)

N'ayant pu apparemment convenir de députés, auprès de sa majesté, c'étoit notre agent lui-même, qui étoit obligé de leur en servir (SULLY,) (for, *d'agent.*)

Comme elle ne vouloit pas se taire, il prit un bâton, & lui en donna un coup, (for, *du bâton ; where en has an Ablative forcee.*)

Je ne m'en faisois pas prier longtems, (for, *la dessus, sur cet article ; about, concerning, on, that subject.*)

Sans attendre d'en être requis, (SULLY,) (for, *d'etre requis de le faire.*)

Il s'en ouvrit à, (VERTOT, Rev. Rom.) (for, *il s'ouvrit de cet avis à.*)

Venez vous de Paris ? Oui, j'en viens, (for, *de Paris, which is an Ablative.*)

Monsieur — est sorti de famille de N — qui a été toujours noble ; vous en êtes sorti vous même, (for, *de la famille de N —, which is also ablative.*)

Quand un homme est mort, on n'y pense plus, (for, *à cet homme.*)

Ce sont des folies, ne vous y fiez pas, (for, *à ces folies.*)

Je dois être à Paris dans six mois ; y devez-vous être alors ? (for, à Paris.)

Il l'a fait, mais il n'y gagnera rien, (for, à cela, or, à cette action.)

Il s'est engagé dans une étrange affaire, il n'y réussira pas, (for, à cette affaire.)

Vous n'y êtes pas, (for, au but.)

Vous vous y prenez mal, (for, à cette affaire.)

Il est en repos, que ne vous y êtes aussi ? (SEVIGNE,) (for, en repos, par venu à ce point.)

In the following instances, *le*, *en*, and *y*, stand in the place of sentences :

On ne me trompe point, je ne puis le croire, or, je n'en puis rien croire, (for, qu'on veuille me tromper, or, qu'on me trompe.)

Je n'ignore pas sur quoi ni pour quoi il dit cela, mais je ne lui en fais pas semblant (SULLY) (for, de n'ignorer pas sur quoi ni pour quoi il dit cela.)

On dit qu'il doit commander l'armée, mais je ne puis y ajouter foi, (for, à ce qu'il doit commander l'armée.)

CRITICAL OBSERVATIONS concerning *en* and *y*.

Chambaud seems to think *en* in the following instance not to be a Genitive; he is however mistaken, as we shall easily discover :—[Peut-être que la compassion est une des plus aimables vertus ;] du moins c'en est une grande : where *en* stands for *des vertus*, and the sentence is elliptical, for—c'est une grande *vertu des vertus* : this is what grammarians call a partitive sentence ; like *dexter oculorum*, which is the same as *dexter oculus oculorum*. See the subject explained, Gram. Lat. Port Royal, p. 411, and 416.

So in the following instance, *en* is Genitive, notwithstanding what the same grammarian would insinuate :—Si vous voulez voir de beaux tableaux, il en a.—*En* is there

the

the representative of *de beaux tableaux*, which is a partitive phrase; implying *some* fine pictures: now these partitive expressions are Genitive; for, as Buffier very justly observes, they are elliptical for *une partie des beaux tableaux qui se trouvent au monde*; and in this view *en*, referring to a Genitive, and representing it, must of course be Genitive itself; i. e. must retain its natural force.

The following use of *en* is curious; but yet, I think, may be accounted for:—*Il en est de la poësie, comme de la peinture*; *il faut qu'on soit né poète & peintre*; autrement *on ne fera que de mechantes vaudevilles*, & *on ne peindra que des dessus de porte*. Here *en* has an anticipated connection with the sentence which follows, —*Il faut qu'on soit né poète & peintre*; in the same manner as if the order of the sentence had been,—*Il faut qu'on soit né poète & peintre, il en est de la poësie comme de la peinture*. Nature must form the poet and the painter; it is in that particular that they are alike; that is, their common point of resemblance. It only marks the dependance of the member in which it occurs on some other: the great difficulty is to justify its dependance on a following, and not a preceding member; but this is not singular in French:—*Il s'indignoient de ce, qu'on les tenoit dans une servitude humiliante*:—*Ils se retrancherant à ce, qu'on les traitât d'égaux*:—*Nous ne différons qu'en ce, que l'un fait ce changement par deux procédés, & l'autre par le moyen d'un seul*; (RAYNAL.) In which sentences *ce* is a Pronoun referring to the sentence, which performs the parts of its Substantive.

In like manner in this expression:—*J'en étois ici de ma lettre*; *en* stands for *de ma lettre*, which is still idiomatically added: for—*J'en étois ici*; I was at that part of it; of what?—of my letter,—*J'en étois ici de ma lettre*.—Just as we say in French also—*C'est un vice que l'avarice*, for *l'avarice est un vice*. I would just observe, that *ici* is probably a corruption of *à ci*, amounting to *à cet endroit*, which accounts for *de ma lettre* being in the Genitive.

Les plus malheureux en étoient à ces faveurs qui assurent que la dernière viendra à la première occasion; (J. B. ROUSSEAU); where *en* serves to shew that these favours were granted by a person before mentioned; and that this sentence is therefore dependant on a preceding one.

Ma mère a conçu des soupçons, mon père n'en est pas là; (J. J. ROUSSEAU, Nouvelle Héloïse.) *En* refers to the

soupçons formed by the mother; and *là* is used because the mother's suspicions, having outstripped the father's, occupy a place beyond them: the father's are therefore not *là* or *si far*. The sentence implies then—*Ma mère a concu des soupçons; mon père n'est pas là (où ma mère est) de soupçons—à ce point, à ce degré de soupçons.*

In the following phrase—*Je n'en puis plus, en* implies whatever the speaker had been before doing, which he can no longer do. Thus, if after running, you felt yourself fatigued, and stopping short, cried out, *Je n'en puis plus,* the meaning of your observation would be, *Je ne puis plus courir.* It is generally rendered into English by—I am quite spent.

Y, says Pere Buffier, is seldom said of persons; though *le* and *en* commonly refer to them. We say of a man very properly,—*Je n'en fais point de cas;* but by no means,—*C'est un honnête homme, attachez vous y.* Although we say, *Je connois cet homme, je ne m'y fie pas;* (where, says Buffier, “*Je ne m'y fie pas* a l'air d'une expression pro-“ verbiale;”) we say too—*Quand un homme est mort on n'y pense pas;* because *un homme* is no more determinate than *quelqu'un*, or perhaps because *un homme mort* is rather to be considered as an inanimate substance, than as the remains of a rational creature; but in general it is much better to use *à lui* than *y*, in speaking of persons, excepting in answering a question:—*Pensez-vous à votre ami?* *Oui j'y pense;* which, says the same grammarian, is better than *Je pense à lui.*

En and *y* are indeclinable: *le* is generally so, except when it relates to a Substantive:—*Est ce là votre pensée? pouvez-vous douter que ce ne la soit?* (where *la* stands for *ma pensée*:)—*Etes-vous Madame—? Je la suis* (for, *Madame*—: *Sont-ce là vos chevaux, vos outils? ce les font,* (for, *vos chevaux, vos outils.*)

N O T E.

Chambaud says, that *le* is also declinable in the Singular Number, when a woman is speaking of herself, in sentences like the following:—*Je suis malade et je la serois long temps sans vos soins:* but Restaut, in his *Grammaire Raisonnée*, says,

says, that the authority of the most sensible women, and of the generality of good authors, is against it:—his reason for its being declinable when referring to a Substantive, and indeclinable when to an Adjective, I think a very good one. I give it in his own words:—“Ayan rapport à un nom Substantif, il doit en prendre le Genre et le Nombre, comme un Adjectif; ce qui n'arrive pas, quand il n'a rapport précisément qu'à un nom Adjectif, qui n'a par lui-même ni Genres ni Nombres, mais seulement par le Substantif auquel il est joint, & sur lequel il ne tombe point dans le cas dont il s'agit ici.” P. 92.

It has been already observed, that when the Pronouns *en* and *y* come together, *y* precedes *en*; but when *en* is a Pronoun, it takes the lead of *y*:—*En y allant*; *y* being then joined to the Verb, agreeably to its quality of a Pronoun Conjunctive.*

§. Of the Use and Construction of the PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

Of these there are two kinds:

I. The *Pronominal Possessive Adjectives* (called *Possessive*, as always implying Possession; and *Pronominal Adjectives*, as having all the properties of Adjectives, at the same time that they are derived from

S. P. }	S. P. }	S. P. }	S. P. }
M. F. M&F. }			
mon,	ma,	mes,	ton,
son,	sa,	ses,	ta,
notre,	nôs,	votre,	vôs,
			leur,
			leurs.

* When *en* happens to meet with a Gerund, or Participle in *ant*, it comes *after* it, and not *before*, as it should, if the energy of the Verb was expressed in any other form of the Verb, in order to prevent its being taken for the Preposition *en*.—Il le pria d'instruire son fils, *woulaient en faire* un savant; or, comme il *en vouloit faire* un savant.

II. The

soupçons formed by the mother; and *là* is used because the mother's suspicions, having outstripped the father's, occupy a place beyond them: the father's are therefore not *là* or *si far*. The sentence implies then—*Ma mère a concu des soupçons; mon père n'est pas là (où ma mère est) de soupçons—à ce point, à ce degré de soupçons.*

In the following phrase—*Je n'en puis plus, en* implies whatever the speaker had been before doing, which he can no longer do. Thus, if after running, you felt yourself fatigued, and stopping short, cried out, *Je n'en puis plus,* the meaning of your observation would be, *Je ne puis plus courir.* It is generally rendered into English by—I am quite spent.

y, says Pere Buffier, is seldom said of persons; though *le* and *en* commonly refer to them. We say of a man very properly,—*Je n'en fais point de cas;* but by no means,—*C'est un honnête homme, attachez vous y.* Although we say, *Je connois cet homme, je ne m'y fie pas;* (where, says Buffier, “*Je ne m'y fie pas* a l'air d'une expression pro-“ verbiale;”) we say too—*Quand un homme est mort on n'y pense pas;* because *un homme* is no more determinate than *quelqu'un*, or perhaps because *un homme mort* is rather to be considered as an inanimate substance, than as the remains of a rational creature; but in general it is much better to use *à lui* than *y*, in speaking of persons, excepting in answering a question:—*Pensez-vous à votre ami?* *Oui j'y pense;* which, says the same grammarian, is better than *Je pense à lui.*

En and *y* are indeclinable: *le* is generally so, except when it relates to a Substantive:—*Est ce là votre pensée? pouvez-vous douter que ce ne la soit?* (where *la* stands for *ma pensée*:)—*Etes-vous Madame—? Je la suis* (for, *Madame*—: *Sont-ce là vos chevaux, vos outils? ce les sont,* (for, *vos chevaux, vos outils.*)

N O T E.

Chambaud says, that *le* is also declinable in the Singular Number, when a woman is speaking of herself, in sentences like the following:—*Je suis malade et je la serois long temps sans vos soins:* but Restaut, in his *Grammaire Raisonnée*, says,

says, that the authority of the most sensible women, and of the generality of good authors, is against it:—his reason for its being declinable when referring to a Substantive, and indeclinable when to an Adjective, I think a very good one. I give it in his own words:—“Ayan rapport à un nom Substantif, il doit en prendre le Genre et le Nombre, comme un Adjectif; ce qui n'arrive pas, quand il n'a rapport précisément qu'à un nom Adjectif, qui n'a par lui-même ni Genres ni Nombres, mais seulement par le Substantif auquel il est joint, & sur lequel le ne tombe point dans le cas dont il s'agit ici.” P. 92.

It has been already observed, that when the Pronouns *en* and *y* come together, *y* precedes *en*; but when *en* is a Pronoun, it takes the lead of *y*:—*En y allant*; *y* being then joined to the Verb, agreeably to its quality of a Pronoun Conjunctive.*

§. Of the Use and Construction of the PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

Of these there are two kinds:

I. The *Pronominal Possessive Adjectives* (called *Possessive*, as always implying Possession; and *Pronominal Adjectives*, as having all the properties of Adjectives, at the same time that they are derived from

S. P. } S. P. }						
m. r. m&r. } m. r. m&r. }						
<i>Pronouns</i>) which are <i>mon, ma, mes,</i> { <i>ton, ta, tes,</i> }						
S. P. } S. P. } S. P. }						
m. r. m&r. } m. r. m&r. }						
<i>son, sa, ses,</i> { <i>notre, nos,</i> { <i>votre, vos,</i> { <i>leur, leurs.</i> } }}						

* When *en* happens to meet with a Gerund, or Participle in *ant*, it comes *after* it, and *not before*, as it should, if the energy of the Verb was expressed in any other form of the Verb, in order to prevent its being taken for the Preposition *en*.—*Il le pria d'instruire son fils, voulant en faire un savant; or, comme il en voulloit faire un savant.*

II. The

II. The Possessive Relative Pronominals (distinguished by the Appellation of *Relative*, because they are not joined with their Sub- stantive, but imply that it is previously ex- pressed, referring to it as to an antecedent);

which are, le mièn, la miènne, les mièns, les miènnes, }
 S. M. F. M. P. M. F.
 le tièn, la tiènne, les tièns, les tiènnes, } le fièn, la fiènne, }
 M. F. M. P. M. F.
 les fièns, les fiènnes, } le, la, nôtre, les nôtres, }
 M. & F. M. & F.
 S. P. S. P.
 le, la, vôtre, les vôtres, } le, la, leur, les leurs, }
 M. & F. M. & F.

Pronominal Possessive Adjectives do not agree in French with the Noun of the Possessor, as in English, but with that of the thing possessed; as,—*La mère aime son fils, et le père sa fille*; (the mother loves *her* son, and the father *his* daughter.)

When a Noun Feminine (which should naturally take before it the Feminine, *ma*, *ta* *sa*,) begins with a Vowel, or *b* mute, it takes the Masculine Possessive, in order to avoid the hiatus:—*Mon ame*, *son histoire*, *son élévation*, *son honneur*.

The Pronominal Adjectives are prefixed to Nouns of relations and friends, when we address ourselves to them:—*Venez-ça ma fille!* or, *mon enfant!* *Tout à l'heure ma mère! mon père!* *oui, ma tante!* *est-ce vous, mon ami?*

When the correspondent English Possessives come

come after a Verb, with a Noun governing them, they are resolved, in French, into their Primitive Pronouns Personal, which are put in the Dative Case.

He has cut off *bis* head; *Il lui a coupé la tête.*
 You cut *my* finger; *vous me coupez le doigt.*
 Twist *bis* neck; *Tordez lui le cou.*

They are wholly left out before Substantives, when a Pronoun Personal precedes, which sufficiently marks whose is the thing of which we speak; and the Noun is attended by the Article, as in the above examples:—*Je lui dois la vie;* (which is Englished, —I owe *my* life to him:)—
Il grince les dents, (he gnashes *bis* teeth;) where the Pronouns *je* and *il* specify whose teeth and life are meant, and therefore make the Possessives unnecessary.

For the same reason we do not say,—*J'ai mal à ma tête, à mon ventre, à mes dentes;* but, *à la tête, au ventre, aux dents:* for no one can have a pain in any head, belly, or teeth, but his own; and of course an explanatory word is superfluous, if not, strictly speaking, ridiculous.

But we say,—*Je vois que ma jambe s'ensle;* for as I can see another person's leg swell, as well as my own, it is necessary to define whose leg I mean. Nevertheless, if the pain is become as it were habitual, we may say (in speaking of it to somebody aware of the circumstance)—*Ma tête, or ma jambe, me fait mal; ma migraine m'a fort tourmenté aujourd'hui:* wherefore the addition

of the Possessive denotes there the inveteracy of the disorder.

It is for the same, or at least a similar reason, that we say,—*Il ne se tiendra pas ferme sur ses pieds*, *tenez-vous ferme sur vos pieds*; because this ought to be natural and habitual: and perhaps too this use of the Possessive contains an oblique reproach for not doing, or being obliged to be told to do, what is dictated by nature herself.

NOTE.

We say, in a proverbial manner also,—*Il se trouvera sur ses pieds*, to imply that a man will not suffer from undertaking any particular thing:—*Il retombera toujours sur ses pieds*, to express that a man has always the dexterity of getting off clear, whatever he attempts. [And here it will not be amiss to observe, that *ses*, in such a sentence as this, —*Se trouver sur ses pieds*, is not rendered *his*, but, in conformity to the indeterminate Pronoun *se*, which begins the sentence, and is rendered *one's self*; the *s*s must be englisched *one's*; thus,—to be upon *one's feet*; or still more literally, to find *one's self* on *one's feet*.]

The Pronouns Possessive are besides used in some few sentences like the following, with great propriety; and, as will be proved, from absolute necessity:—*Il lui donna sa main à baiser*; where it would be impossible to express the same meaning without the Possessive, as you could not say, —*Il lui lui donna la main à baiser*; nor yet,—*Il lui se donna la main*, &c. *Elle a donné hardiment son bras au chirurgien*; where you could not say,—*Elle lui a donné le bras au chirurgien*; for it would appear that *donna* had two Datives in government, and the sentence would be obscure; which would be also the case, if *se* was used in the place of *lui*.—*Il perd tout son sang*; where, if you should say, —*Il lui perd tout le sang*, the most obvious sense would be, that he was losing all his blood for another person, implied in *lui*; and even with that perverted meaning, the sentence would be awkward and unnatural.

It is indifferent to say,—*élever la voix*, or, *élever sa voix*, as no obscurity occurs in the first phrase, and no tautology in the second.

As

As the Personal Pronouns of the Third Person cannot be used in some particular cases, when we speak of irrational and inanimate things, so in similar cases their correspondent Possessives cannot be always employed with propriety; instead whereof we use *en* upon such occasions: as,—*Cette maladie est fort cachée; cependant j'en connois l'origine et les effets,* (and not, *son origine et ses effets*): but we say, —*Je connois cette maladie son origine, ses symptômes, et ses effets:* and so in one instance —*Voyez-vous cette maison? la situation en* (not, *sa situation*) *est belle; les pavillons en* (not, *ses pavillons*) *sont grands:* and in another—*Cette maison a ses commodités & ses inconveniens,* (and not, *en a les commodités, &c.*) The reason of these differences is, that *en* always refers to something in a different member of the sentence from that wherein it is itself placed; (whence it is evident, that—*En a les commodités, &c.* would in the above sentence not convey the same meaning as—*A ses commodités, &c.*): wherefore the following phrases are right:—*Remettez ce livre en sa place; mettez-le en sa place;* (not to say that the concurrence of the Preposition *en*, and the Pronoun *en*, would be barbarous beyond measure.)

The Pronominal Possessive Adjectives must (in French) be always repeated before every Noun in the sentence, with which they are connected in construction:—*Son père et sa mère,* (englished, *his father and mother*); *nôs amis et nôs ennemis;* *elle lui fit voir ses plus beaux et ses plus vilains habits.*

NOTE.

N O T E.

The Pronominal Adjective is sometimes made Plural, when referring to two Singular Nouns, instead of preceding each singularly :—“ Jamais fille n'a eu pour ses père et mère “ des attentions plus soutenues, ni des empressements plus “ tendres.” (MARMONTEL, Contes Moraux, Bergere des Alpes.)

The Possessive Relative Proninals, *le mien*, *le nôtre*, &c. are of the same use, and have the same construction, as in English, being never put before a Noun, but always relating to a foregoing one :—Est-ce là votre livre ? oui, c'est *le mien* ; (or, ce l'est.)

Il n'y avoit point de citoyen, qui ne tremblât à l'aspect du tribunal des censeurs ; le senator, le chevalier, & le simple citoyen par la peur d'être rayé de sa classe, et réduit dans la dernière, ou du moins dans une des centuries, moins honorables que la *sienne* ; VERTOT, Rev. Rom. L. vi. (where *la sienne* has the force of *sa century*.—)

But when one of this tribe of Adjectives, referring to an antecedent expressed in the same member, comes in English after the Verb *to be*, in the sense of *to belong*, it must be resolved in French, into its Primitive Pronoun Personal [Disjunctive,] which must be put in the Dative Case, governed by the Preposition *à* :—This book is *mine* ; ce livre est *à moi* :—Cette Maison est *à lui* ; that house is *bis*.

N O T E.

Where a Noun follows *être*, in the Dative, instead of a Pronoun, the correspondent English Noun is frequently Genitive :—Ce chapeau est *à monsieur* ; this hat is *the gentleman's*.

Such

Such English phrases as these, wherein occur these last sort of Pronominals,—a friend of *mine*, a book of *his*,—must be rendered into French with the first kind of Possessives regularly preceding their Substantive:—*Un de mes amis*; *un de ses livres*.

§. Of the Use and Construction of the PRONOUNS RELATIVE, *qui*, *lequel*, &c.

These are particularly called *Relative*, as always referring to some precedent Noun or Pronoun (stiled with respect to them, the *Antecedent*) and “serve to recall the ideas of those persons and things, signified previously by such Noun or Pronoun.” (RESTAUT.) *Dieu qui aime les hommes*; *la doctrine qui met le souverain bien dans la volupté du corps*, est indigne d'un philosophe.

Sometimes the Antecedent is understood:—*Qui ne sait pas garder un secret, est incapable de gouverner*; i. e. *celui qui*, &c.

The Relative *qui* always comes next the Antecedent:—*Ces gens qui demeuroient chez moi sont partis*; *ceux qui méprisent la science n'en connaissent pas le prix*.

EXCEPTIONS.

Except when by the addition of *là* to the Pronouns *ce-lui*, *celle*, *ceux*, they may be separated from the Relative, (as will be more particularly seen hereafter:)—*Ceux-là ne connoissent pas le prix de la science, qui*, &c. And when the Antecedent is a Pronoun Personal, coming before its Verb; as, *Il la trouva qui pleuroit à chaudes larmes*.

The

The Relative *qui* is used in the Nominative and Accusative Cases, for both Genders and Numbers, and with respect to all sorts of objects: but in the Genitive and Dative, or after any Prepositions, it is said of personal objects only, or such as are considered in the light of personal objects.

When we speak of irrational and inanimate objects, in such a manner as to require a Relative in the Genitive or Dative, we use the other Relative Pronouns, *lequel* and *quoi* :—

L'homme ou la femme qui vous a parlé, or, que vous voyez : Les choses qui lui plaisent le plus : Le cheval que vous montez : Les malheurs que vous appréhendez : Le Prince [or, la Princesse] de qui il a reçu tant de faveurs : Le Maître [ou, la Maitresse] à qui il appartient : Le cheval dont or duquel je me sers : L'opinion à laquelle or à quoi je m'attache : La chose sur laquelle je fais fond.

We say,—*La Fortune de qui j'attends tout, le Ciel de qui doit venir mon secours*: because *Fortune* and *Ciel* are there personified.

Dont is used for both Genders and Numbers, instead of the Genitive of the three Pronouns Relative, *qui*, *lequel*, *quoi*; or rather it is a Genitive common to the three: when used, it always precedes the Conjunctives, *je*, *nous*, *tu*, *vous*, *il*, *ils*, *elle*, *elles*; and it is said both of persons and things:—*C'est l'homme dont je parle : C'est une charge dont il ne se soucie pas : Vous voyez les femmes dont il parloit.*

But in asking a question with a Relative, we must not begin with *dont*; we must say in such cases,

cases, of persons and things,—*De qui or de quoi parlez-vous?* [*Of whom or of what are you talking?*]

There is this farther distinction to be made in the application of *de qui* and *dont* to persons (where they may both be used without contradicting any express rule) that *de qui* expresses, very aptly, the *Ablative* of the Latins, and then takes *from* as its sign in English:—*L'homme de qui j'ai reçu une lettre;* (the man *from whom*, &c.)

Whereas *dont* is particularly correspondent to the Genitive:—*La personne dont la réputation vous étonne;* the person *whose* reputation (or, the reputation *of whom*) astonishes you.

Dont must have immediately before it the term which it refers to, and be followed by a Subject or Nominative Case (either Noun or Pronoun) to a Verb immediately following; or by a Verb Impersonal followed by another Verb, and the Object or Accusative Case coming last:—*Le ciel dont le secours est nécessaire:* *Le ciel dont il faut implorer le secours.*

You therefore cannot say,—*Le ciel, dont sans le secours, or, sans dont le secours, nous ne pouvons réussir;* because in the first instance *dont* is not immediately followed by a Noun or Verb, and in the second, it does not immediately follow its grammatical Antecedent.

But upon such occasions the Pronouns *de qui* and *duquel* must be used:—*Le ciel sans le secours duquel* [or *de qui,*] &c.

Où is used for the Dative of the Pronouns Relative, and also for them when they are governed

verned by any of these Prepositions, *at*, *in*, *into*, *with*, in English : it answers to both Genders and Numbers, denoting *time*, *place*, *condition*, *disposition*, *design*, *end*, and *aim*; but relates only to things, and never to persons :—*Voilà le but, où il tend*, (for *auquel*;) *le siècle où nous vivons*, (for *dans lequel*;) *une affaire où je ne veux pas entrer*, (for *dans laquelle*;) *les malheurs où il est plongé*, (for *dans lesquels*.)

From *où* are formed *d'où* (from whence,) and *par où* (through where, through which place.)

Que is used both for *de qui* and *à qui* (besides its being the Accusative of *qui*) in both Genders and Numbers, whenever there comes immediately before it the Genitive and Dative of a Pronoun Personal, which serves to mark the substitution :—*C'est de vous qu'on parle*, (for *dont* on parle;) *c'est à vous qu'on s'adresse*, (for *à qui*, &c.)

Qui, besides its being relative, is also interrogative and declarative, signifying *quelle personne*; and then it takes *qui* and not *que* for its Accusative :—*Qui a fait cela*, or *qui est-ce qui a fait cela?* (where it is Nominative;) *Je sais qui vous voulez dire*; *qui verrez-vous tantôt?*

Qui interrogative signifies also *quelle chose* :—*Qui fait l'oiseau si non le plumage?*

The Dative of the Pronoun Relative *qui* is idiomatically used in sentences like the following :—*Il faut voir à qui l'attrapera*: c'étoit à *qui des deux seroit le plus enfant*; (ROUSSEAU's Héloïse, L. vi. lett. 2.) *à qui mieux mieux*. It is extremely difficult to analyse this use of the Dative; and, accordingly, grammarians in general consider it as a peculiarity of the language, which

which is more frequently used, than easy to be accounted for.

NOTE.

A conjecture presenting itself to my mind on the subject, I shall venture to offer it, as no better analysis has been made by any grammarian whose works have fallen into my hands. One may suppose the phrase to have originated on some such occasion as this: in establishing a prize to be contended for, the distributor or donor said,—*C'est à qui* (*for à celui qui*) *fera telle ou telle chose*; and thence the turn of expression was adopted in every case where there was any degree of contest, although the prize or reward which gave rise to it was out of the question. Upon these principles we may supply the above phrases thus:—*Il faut voir [le résultat de cette petite contestation où l'on a mis en dépôt une récompense qui doit appartenir] à [celui] qui l'attrapera*: which corresponds in meaning to the shorter translation of the phrase into English,—*Let us see who will catch him*. In the same manner we may discover the force of the phrase quoted from Rousseau:—[*On avoit donné une mise; c'étoit à [celui] qui seroit le plus enfant*]: whence the meaning of the passage is,—*à les voir faire ainsi les enfans, on jureroit qu'ils se disputoient une récompense proposée pour celui qui seroit le plus enfant*. The same idea of emulation must also account for the last phrase, *à qui mieux mieux*, commonly too rendered into English, *in emulation of one another*: we will suppose the sentence wherein it occurred to be,—*Ils le font à qui mieux mieux*; this would mean in all probability,—*Ils le font comme si l'on avoit dit; à [celui] qui mieux [fera] mieux [fera;]* i.e. *ils le font à l'envi l'un de l'autre*.—I shall make no apology for presenting these conjectures of my own, submitting them to be received or rejected at the will of the reader, and to be corrected by any one better informed on the subject.

When in a relative member of a sentence (i. e. a member of a sentence beginning with *qui relative*) there intervenes a Verb as spoken by the author, or an Impersonal Verb, a *que* (pronoun) is introduced, preceding that Verb, and *qui* comes in

in afterwards, besides, before the Verb to which it stands as subject : an example will explain my meaning :—I write him letters *which*, *I think*, are admirable ; which must be rendered,—*Je lui écris des lettres que je crois qui sont admirables* ; (*SEVIGNE'S.*) Pourquoi nous charger d'une querelle *qu'il faudra aussi bien, qui finisse à Pâques* ; Ib. (*which must finish, &c.*) To account for this peculiarity we are to observe, that as the interpolated Verb governs an Accusative, and the regular Verb of the sentence requires a Nominative, both of which characters are to be supported by the Pronoun Relative, it is more consistent with the genius of the French language to admit this redundancy, than to leave the regimen of the two Verbs imperfect.

The Relatives *qui* and *lequel* can never agree with a Noun that has no Article before it : therefore these English sentences,—He did that through avarice, *which* is capable of any thing ; I know that by experience, *which* is a great master ; cannot be rendered into French,—*Il a fait cela par avarice, qui (or laquelle) est capable de tout* ; *Je sais cela par expérience, qui (or laquelle) est un grand maître*. But they must be expressed without the Relative, making two distinct members, one of which ends with the Substantive, and the other begins with *et* or *mais*, and the Noun repeated instead of the relative connection :—*Il a fait cela par avarice, mais l'avarice est capable de tout* : *Je fais cela par expérience, et l'expérience est un grand maître* : or turn it thus,—*et vous savez* ; or, *On fait bien, que l'expérience est un grand maître*. The reason of this is, because

the Relative, in French, can refer only to a Substantive used in its genuine substantial capacity, or to a Pronoun which is the substitute of it, in such capacity. Now, in the above instances of *par avarice*, and *par expérience*, the Substantive is more an attribute denoting and qualifying the deed and the knowledge spoken of by the Verb, than any thing else ; as is confirmed by its not being attended by the Article ; wherefore it is necessary to introduce a second time the same Substantive, supporting its proper character, and consequently entitled to appear at the head of the member, in which it is placed.

Yet the absence of the Article by no means determines, in every case, the character of the Substantive ; for the Relative may have for its Antecedent all those Substantives which, by their nature, or from any grammatical accident, take no Article ; for there the Substantive is not less substantial, than if it was actually preceded by the Article :—*J'ai lu Cicéron qui est aussi bon philosophe qu'orateur* ; where *Cicéron* as a Proper Name takes no Article :—*Hommes ! qui vivez en brutes ! Avarice ! qui causes tant de maux !* where *hommes* and *avarice*, as Vocatives, take no Article :—*Il est coupable de crimes qui méritent la mort : Il n'y a point d'homme qui n'ait son foible* ; *Une sorte de liqueur qui est bonne à boire :* in which three instances the Nouns *crimes*, *homme*, and *liqueur*, take no Article, because their governing words, *coupable*, *point*, and *sorte*, admit no Article before their regimen :—*Il par'e en philosophe qui fait la raison des choses* ; because *en*

in the sense of *like as*, takes no Article before the Noun it governs.

In like manner such Substantives which are preceded by any numeral, as *un*, *deux*, *trois*, *vingt*, &c. or any of these Pronouns, *ce*, *quelque*, *plusieurs*, *tout*, *nul*, *aucun*, can be used as Antecedents to *qui*, because that they, in that respect, answer the end of the Article, which is never joined to a Noun together with any of these words, except *tout*:—*Il vint un homme qui; tout homme est mortel; tout le monde le sait.*

N O T E.

And here I would by the way take notice of an essential difference which occurs in translating *which*, as it refers to a whole sentence or a single word; the following examples and observations will explain it fully:—They say that he is whimsical, ignorant, foolish, and passionate, *which* is not credible. This sentence must be translated thus:—*On dit qu'il est bizarre, ignorant, sot et colère, ce qui n'est nullement à croire.* The news *which* I tell you, I have from good authority; which must be rendered thus,—*Je tiens les nouvelles, que je vous rapporte, de bon lieu.*—We have seen before that *qui* admits of no Substantive to be its Antecedent but one which supports its true, substantial character, or a Pronoun, which is its substitute as such; so here it can by no means admit of so vague a reference as that of a Sentence, immediately as its Antecedent, but requires the intervention of the Pronoun *ce* to act as the collective representative of the Sentence, and as its own immediate Antecedent: which constitutes and accounts for the difference in rendering *which* in the two sentences cited above.

The Pronoun *lequel*, *laquelle*, is used for the sake of avoiding the too frequent repetition of *qui*, and of removing the ambiguities which may arise from that Pronoun (which is of both Genders

ders and Numbers, and said both of things and persons, in the Nominative Case;) as in these sentences:—Alexandre, fils de Phillippe, *qui* regna le premier en Asie; one cannot tell whether it was Alexander or Philip who reigned: whereas *lequel* being put instead of *qui*, will denote that it was Alexander; because that when two Nouns of the same Gender come together, the Relative *lequel* refers to the former, and therefore removes the ambiguity which may be occasioned by *qui*:—C'est la cause de cet effet dont je vais traiter, or, que je vais traiter. You cannot see whether *l'effet* or *la cause* is the subject of the treatise; but the use of *delaquelle*, in the place of *dont* and *que*, decides that *la cause* is the subject in question.

However it is much better to repeat *qui*, though never so often, when it does not occasion any ambiguity, than to use *lequel*, which is quite appropriated to the style of proclamations, édits, treaties, contracts, and other legal writings of that kind, where perspicuity, more than elegance, is requisite.

Qui must be repeated before every Verb of which it is the Nominative Case:—C'est un homme *qui* est savant, *qui* danse bien, *qui* joue de plusieurs instrumens, et *qui* se fait aimer de tout le monde.

In sentences where *qui* and *lequel* occur, implying a comparison between two persons or things, the Substantives expressing those persons and things, compared, are put in the Genitive Case, and that Genitive Case is rendered into English by the Nominative:—Les Dieux et les Déesses de l'Olympe avoient les yeux attachés sur

l'isle de Calypso, pour voir qui seroit victorieux, ou de Minerve, ou de l'Amour; (Télémaque, L. i.) to see who would be victorious, Minerva or Love: On ne fait lequel est le plus désagréablement affecté, *de l'œil ou de l'oreille; (Rousseau, Nouvelle Héloïse.)* To account for this use of the Genitive, we must understand *des deux* after *qui ànd lequel*, (*qui, lequel, [des deux,] which [of the two];*) and thence, as the two Nouns of the persons or things compared refer, *separately*, to what *des deux* (for *des deux personnes or choses*) relates, *collectively*, they are put in apposition, i. e. the same Case with it:—*Qui des deux, (que) de Minerve ou de l'Amour, seroit victorieux;* (*which of the two, [namely] Minerva or Love, should be victorious;*) &c.

The Pronoun *quoi* is used for both Genders and Numbers; but is said of things only, and never of persons, and is used instead of *lequel*:—*Le plus grand vice à quoi (for, auquel) il est sujet;* *Ce sont des choses à quoi (for, auxquelles) il faut penser.*

N O T E.

It is a mistake to suppose the following application of the Genitive and Dative of *quoi* absolute:—*Je n'ai pas de quoi vivre:* En effet à *quoi* dépenser de l'argent dans un tel pays?—for those sentences are elliptical: the first for, *Je n'ai pas de l'argent de quoi vivre*, or something of the like kind; where *quoi* is genitive, because *vivre* governs a Genitive,—*Vivre de légumes, de lait, &c.:* and in the dative use of *quoi* above, *quelque chose* understood, is the Antecedent of *quoi*,—*Y-a-t-il quelque chose à quoi, &c.*

As *qui* signifies sometimes *quelle personne*, so *quoi* sometimes signifies *quelle chose*; then it takes *que* in its oblique relations (although *de quoi* and à *quoi*

à quoi may be also used) and is then chiefly interrogative: — *Qu'est-ce que c'est?* (literally, *What is that which it is?*) *Que dites-vous?* *Que or de quoi* sert d'avoir du bien, si l'on n'en fait pas jouir? (where *sert* either has for its Nominative Case the sentence, *d'avoir du bien*, or it understood:) . “ *De quoi* me sert l'abstinence éternelle de tout ce qu'il y a de plus doux au monde si elle qui l'exige ne m'en fçait aucun gré?” (ROUSSEAU, Nouv. Héloïse.)

Besides this Pronoun, *qui* and *quel* are also used to ask questions: — *Qui est cet homme-là?* or, *quel est cet homme-là?* *De qui* ne médit-on pas? *A qui se fier?* (which is elliptical for *à qui peut-on se fier?*) *Que répondre à ces systèmes?* (for, *que faut-il répondre à ces systèmes?*) *Quelle est-cette femme-là?* *Duquel, delaquelle, desquels, desquelles parlez-vous?*

Qui is particularly said of persons, and *quel* of things: therefore to this observation,—Voilà des gens [or, des femmes] qui vous demandent, we reply,—*Qui sont-ils*, or, *qui sont-elles?* but to the following,—Il court d'étranges bruits, we say,—*Quels sont-ils?* J'ai apris de grandes nouvelles,—*Quelles sont elles?* or, *ces nouvelles?*

The Pronoun Interrogative *quel* (without the Article) answers to *what* in English; and *lequel* to *which*, it being followed by the Genitive Case, when it comes before a Noun: — *Quel homme voulez-vous dire?* *Lequel choisissez-vous?* *Lequel des deux souhaitez-vous?*

It may not be useless to take notice of the following remarkable pleonasm, most commonly, and sometimes very necessarily used, in asking

questions with *qui* and *quoi*. The most natural and obvious French for these and similar questions—

<i>Who is there?</i>	<i>qui est-là?</i>	<i>qu'est-ce qui est là?</i>
<i>Who has done that?</i>	<i>qui a fait ce- la?</i>	<i>but they are idio- cela?</i>
<i>What do you say?</i>	<i>qui dites vous?</i>	<i>matically rendered que vous dites?</i>
<i>What do you ask?</i>	<i>que demandez- vous?</i>	<i>qu'est ce que vous demandez?</i>

nay, we often even say,—*Qu'est-ce que c'est que vous dites?* *Qu'est-ce que c'est que vous demandez?*

And to this intimation,—*J'ai quelque chose à vous dire;* the most common answer is,—*Qu'est-ce que c'est?* and not, *qu'est-ce?* or, *quoi est-ce?* nor, *quoi?* which last would rather imply that we had not clearly heard what was said to us.

§. Of the Use and Construction of the PRONOUNS DEMONSTRATIVE *ce, celui, ceci, celà, &c.*

The Demonstratives *ce, cet, cette, ces*, are mere pronominal Adjectives: *celui-ci, celle-ci, celui-là, celle-là, ceux-ci, ceux-là, celles-ci, celles-là*, are used absolutely, i. e. without being made to attend immediately upon a Substantive; and *celui, celle, ceux, celles*, always require after them a Noun in the Genitive Case, or the Relative *qui*:—

Ce tableau, cet ouvrage, cet homme, cette femme, ces gens, ces filles: *Celui-ci est meilleur que*

que *celui-là*; *celles-là* ne sont si belles que *celles-ci*; votre cheval est aussi beau que *celui du Marquignon*; *celui qui aime la vertu*.

NOTE.

Observe here with respect to the Particles *ci* and *là*, which are added to *celui*, &c. that *ci* denotes an object near, or present to, the speaker, and *là* a distant or absent one: they are also joined to *ce*, *cet*, &c. in like manner and with the same force as to *celui*; and when *ce* is attendant on a Noun, they are joined to such Noun, with precisely the same effect:—*Ceci est pour moi, et ce/là est pour vous*: *Cet homme-ci vaut bien cette femme là*. These Particles of place are frequently of great use in clearly defining the sense of the Noun to which they are annexed: thus, if being in London I write a letter, and after mentioning Paris or Vienna, I add something that has happened there, I must necessarily say,—*en cette ville-là*; *là* being added to *ville* to denote the distant city which I have been mentioning: for should I say, *en cette ville*, these words would imply that it was at London where the thing I was speaking of happened. So if, being myself in the same situation as before supposed, I have occasion to speak of Paris and Vienna together, I should think it necessary to say any thing particularly of Vienna (the last city mentioned) I conceive it would be requisite to add *ci* to the Substantive representing it, in order to shew that I had that, and not the former, city, *Paris*, in my eye.

The Pronouns *celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, which relate both to *persons* and *things*, being followed by the Relative *qui*, are referable only to persons, and are englisch'd by *he who*, *she who*, *they who*; and the Pronoun Demonstrative is the Nominative of one Verb, and the Pronoun Relative of another:—*Celui qui aime la vertu est heureux*: *Celle qui refuse un mari n'est pas toujours sûre d'en retrouver un autre*: *Ceux qui méprisent la science n'en connoissent pas le prix*.

Observe therefore, to render *he who*, *she who*,

they who, by *celui qui*, *celle qui*, *ceux qui*, and not by *il qui*, *elle qui*, *ils* or *eux qui*.

Observe also, that though these two words may be separated in English, and come before their respective Verbs, yet they must come always together in French before the first Verb, unless *là* is added to the Demonstrative:—*Ceux là ne connoissent pas le prix de la science, qui la méprisent.*

Or the sentence may be turned in a very elegant idiomatical form by *c'est*, an infinitive following it, without any Preposition or other preceding word, and a second Infinitive preceded by *que de*:—*C'est ne pas connoître le prix de la science, que de la mépriser*; (it is not to know the value of science, namely, to despise it):—*C'est être heureux que d'aimer la vertu.*

His, her, their, in English, governed by a Substantive, followed by the Pronoun relative *who*, before a Verb, are made into French by the Genitive of *celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, followed by *qui*, as in the above example:—All men blame *bis* manners *who*—tout le monde blame les moeurs *de celui qui*,—&c. ; where we may remark, that *bis*, *her*, *their*, in English, are synonymous to the Genitives of their primitive Pronouns.

Where *such as*, or *such that*, is used in English, with the same meaning as *be who*, *they who*, it is also rendered by *celui qui*, *ceux qui*.

These two expressions, *the former*, *the latter*, referring to Substantives in the following sentence, are rendered by *l'un* and *l'autre*, or by *celui-ci* and *celui-là*, agreeing in Gender with the Noun;

Noun; and *celui-ci* relates to the Noun last mentioned (as being *nearest* to the speaker; see the note on *ci* and *là*); and *celui-là* to that first mentioned (as being *most distant* from the speaker; see also the note on *ci* and *là*): but *l'un* and *l'autre* may relate to either, which is frequently determined by its Gender, and that of the Substantive referred to.

Virtue is nothing else than an entire conformity to the eternal rule of things; vice is the infringement of that rule: *the former* causes the happiness of men, *the latter* makes them miserable; therefore let us love the *former*, and detest *the latter*.

La vertu n'est autre chose qu'une entière conformité à la règle éternelle des choses; le vice est l'infraction de cette règle: *celui-ci* fait le malheur des hommes; *celle-là* les rend heureux; aimons donc *l'une*, & ayons *l'autre* en horreur.

The Primitive *ce* coming before *qui* or *que*, is englisch'd by *that which* or *what*, in most cases; these two words making a sort of Pronoun, which marks and relates to something either spoken of before, or to be mentioned after:

H dit ce qu'il sait; he says *what* he knows.
C'est ce qui ne sera jamais; it is *what* will never be.

When *ce qui*, or *ce que*, in the beginning of a sentence of two parts or members, is jointly with the Verb, the Nominative Case coming before the Verb *est* in the second part or member of the sentence, *ce* must be repeated before the Verb *est*, and *est* be followed by *de*, if it is followed by an *Infinitive*, and by *que*, if by *another Mood*:—*Ce que je crains, c'est d'être surpris, ce qui l'afflige, c'est qu'on le croit coupable.*

But *ce* must not be repeated before *est*, when there comes next an *Adjective*:—*Ce que vous dîtes est vrai.*

When a *Noun* comes next to *est*, it is indifferent to repeat *ce* or not:—*Ce que je dis est la vérité, or c'est la vérité.*

EXCEPT when the *Verb Substantive* is *Plural*, for then *ce* must be repeated:—*Ce que je ne puis souffrir, ce sont les insolences et les trahisons.*

(Other Particulars concerning *ce* preceding *est*, will be hereafter mentioned, under the heads of *C'est Personal*, and *C'est Impersonal*.)

§. Of PRONOUNS Indeterminate, *quelqu'un*, *chacun*, *quiconque*, *personne*, *nul*, &c.

Quelqu'un and *chacun* (which are compounded of *quelque un*, *chaque un*) are said both of persons and things, but *chacun* has no *Plural*; they require the Article after each of them, when there follows a *Noun* or *Pronoun*:—*Chacun de vous*; *quelques-unes d'entre elles*. *Quelqu'un* is sometimes used absolutely:—*Si je vois quelqu'un*; but generally with reference to a *Noun* which comes after with *de*, or one which has preceded, and is represented by *en*:—*J'aperçois quelques-uns de vos nouveaux livres*; *vous avez de beaux livres*, *prétez m'en quelqu'un*, or, *quelques-uns*:—*Chacun de ces tableaux est d'un grand prix*; *ces choses là ont chacune leur mérite*—*ôtes ces livres*, *et les mettez chacun à sa place*.

Quiconque

Quiconque signifies, and is said of, *any body whatsoever*, and is only of the Singular Number:—*Quiconque méprise les belles lettres, se rend lui-même méprisable ; quiconque de vous sera assez hardi pour médire de moi, je l'en ferai repentir.*

Sometimes *quiconque* is the object of one Verb at the same time that it is the subject of another:—*Il a ordre d'arrêter quiconque passera par là.*

Sometimes it serves as the subject of two Verbs:—*Quiconque a médité les ouvrages de Cicéron, doit savoir en quoi consiste la véritable éloquence.*

Sometimes it is governed in the Genitive, and yet acts as the subject to a Verb following:—*En dépit de quiconque y trouvera à redire.*

Sometimes in the Dative, and yet subject to a Verb:—*Ce reproche est addressé à quiconque se croit coupable.*

Qui, as the Substitute of *quiconque*, performs these double offices:—*Qui répond paye, c'est l'excuse ordinaire de qui n'en à point de bonne ; Il le dit à qui veut l'entendre.*

N O T E.

The reason of this is, according to Restaut, that *quiconque*, having the force of *toute personne qui*, contains in itself the relative with its antecedent; and is thence, without any inconsistency, in virtue of these two capacities, made to perform two offices at once, as specified in the rules.

We cannot say,—*En dépit de quiconque*, to signify, in spite of *any one whatsoever*; it being essential to that Pronoun to govern and be governed.

verned at the same time; therefore in that case we should rather say,—*En dépit de tout le monde*, or, *de qui que ce soit*.

Pérsone (nobody) is directly opposite to *qui-conque*, and is seldom used but with Verbs attended by a Negative, or in exclusive Prepositions, which infer a Negation in their nature:—*Ne faire tort à personne*; *vivre sans faire tort à personne*.

EXCEPTIONS.

Pérsone is used without a Negative in sentences of interrogation, admiration, and doubt, and where the Adverb *trop* is used:—*Y-a-t-il personne au monde qui vous estime plus que moi?* *Pérsone a-t-il jamais pu trouver la pierre philosophale?* *Je doute que personne ait jamais mieux connu les hommes que La Bruyère:* *Il est trop hardi pour craindre personne.*

In the above questions, we not only enquire after the thing under consideration, but also shew our doubt and wonder at it; whereas in the following, we simply make the enquiry:—*Pérsone n'a-t-il jamais pu trouver la pierre philosophale?*

Though *Pérsone* is said of both Genders, yet it requires the Adjective or Pronoun which refers to it, in the Masculine, even in speaking of a woman:—*Personne n'est si malheureux qu'elle.*

EXCEPTIONS.

Nevertheless, if the Pronoun *pérsone* be applied to a woman, or to women, in such a manner as to cease to be indefinite, and then becomes specified, it requires in such cases the Adjective in the Feminine:—*Ah, mesdames!* *il n'y a personne de vous assez bardie pour*—where *de vous* specifies the sex, as evidently referring to *mesdames*; wherefore *bardie* is put in the Feminine.

Nul, pas un, aucun, are also Pronouns negative,

tive, requiring another negative before the Verb, except in sentences of interrogation and doubt: *Nul n'ose en approcher ; pas un ne le croit ; pas un l'a-t-il dit ? y-a-t-il aucun de vous qui le souffrit ?*

Aucun is very seldom used but in sentences of interrogation, and is followed by the Genitive, as in the last instance.

NOTE.

Any body is rendered *tout le monde*, and never *aucune personne*, which (if it was good French at all) would require a negative, and imply quite the contrary, viz. *nobody*: therefore do not say as the French refugees do,—*Demandez à la bourse où il demeure, aucune personne vous le dira ;* but, *tout le monde vous le dira ; or, il n'y a personne qui ne vous le dise.*

Ni l'un ni l'autre will have the Verb in the Singular, if it comes before the Verb, and in the Plural, if it comes after it; because in such case the Verb has for its Nominative Case a Plural Pronoun, which comprehends in its signification the two expressed by *ni l'un ni l'autre*.

Ni l'un ni l'autre n'est venu ; or, ils ne sont venus ni l'un ni l'autre.

L'un et l'autre always requires the Verb in the Plural:—*L'un et l'autre ont raison ; or, ils ont raison l'un et l'autre.*

The Verb construed with *l'un l'autre* must be a reciprocal one, except it is the Verb *être*:—*Ils se font des grimaces l'un à l'autre, ils sont ennemis l'un à l'autre.*

NOTE.

It is very common to add the Preposition *entre* to the reciprocal Verb, which otherwise would be attended by *l'un*

Pun l'autre, but which then does not require it; the same meaning being implied by the reciprocal Verb with the Preposition *entre*, as by the reciprocal Verbs and *l'un l'autre*:—*Ils s'entre-voient; ils s'entre-frappent.*

Some repeated in English in a sentence, is expressed in French by *les uns*; in the first part of the sentence, and *les autres* in the other:—*Les uns aiment une chose, et les autres une autre;* some love one thing, and some another.

Plusieurs is of both Genders, but only of the Plural Number:—*Plusieurs hommes, plusieurs femmes.* The English expression, *many a thing*, is rendered into French by, *plusieurs hommes*, or, *plus d'un homme*.

Tout is variously construed: 1st, It is an Adjective, signifying *all*, and *the whole of*, and always coming before the Article of its Noun, besides the Prepositions *de* and *à*, which it requires in the Genitive and Dative Cases before itself:—*Tout le monde; de tout le monde; à tout le monde.*—Phrases like the following,—*a whole city*, are rendered,—*toute une ville*, &c. : “*S'il n'y a point de crime qui soit inexpiable,*” “*toute une vie doit l'être.*” (MONTESQUIEU, *Esprit des Loix*.)

2dly. It signifies *any*, or *every*, or *each*, and its Noun has no Article:—*Toute vérité n'est pas toujours bonne à dire*; (*all truth, i. e. any truth*): *Toute homme est mortel*; (*every, each man*.)

NOTE.

It is to be observed, that when this Adjective (*tout*) is construed with the proper name of a city or town of the Feminine, it does not agree with it in Gender; and, besides, causes the other Adjective (if there is any) to be Masculine:—*Tout Rome le sait*, (not, *tous Rome*, although *Rome*

Rome is Feminine); *tout la Haye* en est *alarmé*: this is by the figure *Sylyepsis*, (or *Conception*,) in which our *conceptions* attend more to the *meaning* of the word, than to its grammatical properties: thus,—*tout Rome* *fait*, implies, that *all the inhabitants of Rome* know it; for which reason we use the Masculine Gender of the Adjective, with reference to the meaning of the proper name, and not the Feminine, according to the stricter rules of grammatical concord.

3dly. *Tout*, construed with some Verbs, especially with *être*, is used without a Substantive, being itself taken substantively, and, as such, sometimes is preceded by the Article:—*Tout* *est vanité* *en ce monde*; *le tout* *est plus grand que sa partie*.

N O T E.

Tout signifies *every* in all the following expressions:—*Tous les jours*, *toutes les semaines*, *tous les mois*, *tous les ans*; and the Noun is rendered into English singularly:—*à toute heure*, *à tout moment*; but use will have us say,—*à chaque instant*, *à chaque minute*, instead of, *à tous instant*, *à toute minute*.

4thly. *Tout* is used before an Adjective followed by *que*, and is rendered by *although* or *however*, or by *as*, repeated with an Adjective between, or only coming after an Adjective. In this signification it is indeclinable, except (which is worth observing) when the Adjective Feminine before which it comes, begins with a Consonant, for then it admits of a Feminine termination, and if the Adjective is Plural, it may then be Plural also; but when the Adjective, though Feminine and Plural, begins with a Vowel, *tout* remains undeclinable:—*Tout philosophe qu'il est*, *il juge souvent de travers*, (*though he is a philosopher, he often judges wrong*); *tout ignorant qu'il est*, *il a beaucoup de jugement*,

(as)

(as ignorant as he is, &c.); *toutes laides* qu'elles sont, elles sont bien fières, (ugly as they are, &c.); *toute petite* qu'est son armée, il leur donnera bataille, (small as his army is, &c.); *tout étonnantes* que font ces avantures, on les a vu arriver, (however surprising these adventures are, &c.)

5thly. *Tout* is also used before an Adjective in the sense of *quite*, *entirely*, without being followed by *que*; subject to the same rules and restrictions with regard to its Number and Gender, as those specified under the *fourth* use of it:—
Il est tout autre; *elle est tout abattue*; *ils sont tout transportés de joie*; *elles sont toutes transportées de joie*; *elles sont tout éperdues*; *ce sont des nouvelles toutes fraîches*.

But if the Adjective has *aussi* intervening between *tout* and itself, *tout* is indeclinable:—*Elles sont tout aussi fraîches, que si on ne fesoit que de les cueillir.*

6thly. *Tout* is likewise used in the sense of *quite*, before the Adverbs *bas* and *doucement*:—
Parlez tout bas; *marchez tout doucement*.

§. Of certain other PRONOMINAL WORDS.

Autrui is a Pronoun which has neither Gender nor Number; it is used in the Genitive and Dative Cases, in these and such like expressions:—*Desirer* or *convoiter le bien d'autrui*; *nuire à autrui*; *faire à autrui comme nous voudrions qu'on nous fit*.

Quelconque is a Pronominal Adjective, which always

always follows its Noun, and is inseparable from it; its use is mostly confined to law phrases, although sometimes extended to other occasions:—
Nonobstant opposition ou appellation quelconque; il n'y a raison quelconque qui puisse le convaincre; “ Il falloit une dépense quelconque;” (MONTESQUIEU.) *some expence was necessary:* “ Toute juridiction quelconque,” (Id.) “ La pratique d'un metier quelconque durant six ans dans la colonie, en assuroit le libre exercice en France;” (RAYNAL); the following of *any trade whatsoever, &c.*

Quelque signifies either a number indeterminate, or a quality or quantity indeterminate; in the first signification it answers to *some*:—
Quelques hommes, quelques femmes: in the latter signification it answers to these English expressions, *whatever, though with ever so much, or never so much*: — *Quelque mérite qu'on ait, on ne réussit guères sans protecteur,* (*whatever merit a man has, though he has ever so much, or never so much merit*); *quelques richesses qu'il possède, quelques grandes actions qu'il a faites*: where we see that *quelque* takes the Plural termination, and is an Adjective: but in the following acceptation it is rather an Adverb, and indeclinable; that is to say, when it is followed by an Adjective and a Noun governed by *être*, or only when it is followed by an Adjective, which can never happen but with *être*, and it then signifies *however, or howsoever*:—*Quelque riches qu'ils soient; quelque belles que soient ses actions.*

As in English, *whatsoever* is a Pronoun compound, which is sometimes separated into two words

words by another intervening word, as, in *what condition soever I be*; so is likewise *quelque* separated into two words, viz. *quel* and *que*, but without any word, as in English, between : and *quel*, *que*, must be immediately followed by a Verb, or Pronoun Personal in the Nominative Case. *Quel* in such case must agree in Gender and Number with the following Pronoun, which comes before the Verb, or with the Noun (if a Noun be the subject of the Verb) which comes after the Verb, but is its Nominative Case; and the Verb requires no other case of *qui* before it, although it is still governed in the Subjunctive by *que*:—*Quels que puissent être vos desseins*, which amounts to the same as *quelques dessins que vous pourriez avoir*, *quel que je sois*; *quels que nous soyons*, *quelles qu'elles puissent être*.

Whatever and *whatsoever* are not always rendered by *quelque*; we have seen that they sometimes express *quelconque*; they are moreover rendered by *tout ce que*, *quoi que*:—*Tout ce que vous voudrez*, (*whatsoever you will*); *quoi que ce soit*, (*whatever it may be*); *quoi qu'il arrive*, (*whatever happens*); *quoi que vous fassiez*, *vous n'en viendrez pas à bout*, (*whatever you do, &c.*) But observe, that this Pronoun *quoi que* is by no means the same as *quoique* the Conjunction; a mistake very commonly made, from their both governing the Subjunctive.

From *qui* and *quoi* are formed these two other Pronouns indeterminate:

- | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. <i>qui que ce soit</i> , | <i>qui que ce fut.</i> |
| 2. <i>quoi que ce soit</i> , | <i>quoi que ce fut.</i> |

The

The first is said of Persons, and the second of Things.

Qui que ce soit answers to *any body whatsoever*; and when its Verb is attended by a Negative, it signifies *no man in the world, no man living, nobody at all.*

Qui que ce soit qui vous parle, pensez à ce qu'on vous dit, (*whoever, &c.*) — where we see that it takes the Relative *qui* between it and the Verb, in conformity to its original signification; *whoever it be, who speaks to you, &c.*) *Qui que ce soit ne m'en a parlé;* no man in the world has spoken to me about it: *Je n'ai vu qui que ce soit;* I have not seen *any body whatsoever, &c.* I have seen *nobody, &c.*

Qui que ce fut is the same Pronoun, used with the other Tense of the Subjunctive, accordingly as the Tense of the other Verb in the same member requires it: — *Qui que ce fut qui lui parla, il ne repondoit rien;* il ne se défroit de *qui que ce fut.*

These two Pronouns, used without a negative, seem to form a kind of *Nominative Absolute*, which must be followed by the Pronoun Personal *il*; and when the sentence has two members, *qui que se soit, qui que ce fut* must be immediately followed by the Relative *qui* before the Verb of the first member, and *il* must become besides before that of the second: — *Qui que ce soit qui me trompe, il sera puni;* *qui que ce fait, il s'en repentira.*

N O T E.

Perhaps the real state of the case is, that *il* is the antecedent to the *qui*, subjoined to the *qui que ce soit*, which is put

put in apposition with the *il*; as will appear if we throw the sentence into the following explanatory form:—*Il s'en repentira, qui que ce soit, qui me trompe.*

Quoi que ce soit, quoi que ce fut, without a Negative, signifies *any thing whatsoever*, and with a Negative, *nothing at all*, &c.—*Quoique ce soit qui arrive, faites le moi savoir; quoi que ce fut qui arrivât, il s'y soumettoit sans murmurer: Quoique ce soit n'est arrivé.*

Qui que ce soit, qui que ce fut, and *quoi que ce soit, quoi que ce fut*, are also used in the Genitive and Dative Cases.

Tel (such) and *rién* (nothing) may also pass for Pronouns Indeterminate, or Pronominal Words at least, in sentences like these:—*Tel* sème, qui ne recueille pas; (*such* sow as don't reap:) “ Il “ y a *tel* Indien qui se croiroit deshonoré, s'il “ mangeoit avec son roi;” *MONTESQUIEU, Esprit des Loix*; (there is a kind of Indians, under particular circumstances and predicaments:) Il ne dit *rién*; (he says nothing.) Otherwise *tel* is rather an Adjective signifying *such*, and the *que* following it, *as*:—Il est *tel qu'on* le dit; (he is *such as* they say.) But what must be particularly observed of *tell* the Adjective, and which may as well be mentioned here, is, that *tel*, or rather its Noun, takes no Article or Particle when construed with a Verb in the Imperative Mood, although it does with one in any other Mood:—*Imposez-moi telle peine qu'il vous plaira:* but we say,—*Je ne puis souffrir une telle peine, un tel affront.*

“ *Cbaque* implies a person or thing as considered separately from every other,” and is en-glished

glished by each ; “ it is of both Genders, but “ has no Plural :—*Chaque science a ses principes :* “ *On prenoit à Rome le suffrage de chaque ci-“ toyen.*

“ *Certain, certaine*, considered as a Pronoun, “ signifies an indeterminate person or thing, “ having generally the force of *quelque* : it has “ both” Genders and “ Numbers, is sometimes “ preceded by *un, une*, and sometimes not,” and always comes before the Substantive with which it is connected :—“ *Il y a dans chaque plante* “ *une certaine qualité qui la rend salutaire ou* “ *nuisible : Certain philosophe a dit que toutes* “ *nos connaissances venoient par les sens.*

“ *Certain* is sometimes purely an Adjective, “ implying the assurance or confirmation of the “ thing spoken of, and then follows its Substan- “ tive :—*Un état certain, une nouvelle certaine.*”

RESTAUT.

CHAPTER IV.

Upon Nouns of Number.

CARDINAL Numbers are indeclinable, ex-
cept *cent* and *million*, which take an *s* in the
Plural ; as also *vingt*, but only when it comes
after *quatre* and *six* before a Noun :—*Deux cens*
louis ; *trois millions* ; *quatre-vingts livres* ; *six-
vingts hommes* : but we say (with the *vingt* undeclinable) *quatre-vingt-dix* ; *quatre-vingt-un*.

This

This species of numerals always comes immediately before the thing numbered, and cannot be preceded by any Noun or Adjective, except the Possessive Pronominals *mon*, *son*, *leur*, &c.—*Ses deux amis, mes trois frères, leurs six chevaux.*

Un is the only one liable to a change of Gender: it makes *une* in the Feminine.

The Conjunction *et* [and] is put before the unity only:—*Vingt-et-un, trente-et-un, quarante-et-un*, and *le vingt-et-unième, le cinquante-et-unième, &c.*: but it is not put before the other combined numbers, except those which follow *soixante*:—*Vingt-deux, vingt-trois, trente quatre, quarante-cinq, cinquante-six, &c. soixante-et-un, soixante-et-deux, soixante-et-dix, soixante-et-quinze*, up to *quatre-vingt*. But after *quatre-vingt* there is no *et* put, even before the unit:—*Quatre-vingt-un, quatre-vingt-deux, quatre vingt-dix, cent-un, cent-deux, cent unième, cent deux, &c.*

However, some good writers and speakers never use the Conjunction Copulative in all the aforesaid cases; but say only,—*Vingt-un, trente-un, soixante-un, soixante-deux, soixante-dix, &c.*

We say, *six-vingt*, for one hundred and twenty, but *cent-vingt et un*, for one hundred and twenty-one.—We don't say, *sept-vingt*, *huit-vingt*, &c. as the English say *seven score*, *eight score*, &c. but, *cent quarante, cent soixante*.—We say *mille*, and never *dix-cens*, nor *vingt-cens*; but we say, *onze cens, douze cens*, and so on to *deux-mille, deux mille cent, deux mille deux cens, &c. un million*, and never *dix-cens-mille*.

We don't say *septante* for *soixante et dix* (*seventy*), *huitante* for *quatre-vingt* (*eighty*), nor *nonante*.

nonante for *quatre-vingt-dix* (ninety), as the Gascons and some other southern provincials of France do: EXCEPT in geometry, where *nonante* is preserved. We understand by *les Septante*, the Septuagint translators of the Old Testament.

In speaking of the divisions of time, we say, *buit jours*, for a week, (and not *une semaine*;) *quinze jours*, for a fortnight, (and not *quatorze nuits*, or *deux semaines*;) *trois semaines*; *quatre*, *cinq semaines*; *un mois*; *six semaines*, *deux mois*, *deux mois et demi*, (and not *neuf*, or *dix semaines*;) *trois mois*, *six mois*, (and never *un quartier*, *un demi-an*;) *Sept*, *buit*, *neuf*, *mois*, (and not *trois quarts d'an*, nor *trois quartiers*;) *un an*, *un an et demi*, *deux ans*; but we don't say, *un an et un mois*, *un an et deux mois*, &c. but, *treize mois*, *quatorze mois*, &c.

When we speak of an indeterminate number, of which we are not sure, we say, *un ou deux*, *deux ou trois*, down to *sept ou buit*; then we say, *dix ou douze*, *douze ou quinze*, *quinze ou vingt*, *vingt ou trente*, *trente ou quarante*, as far as *sixty*; then *soixante ou quatre-vingt*, *quatre-vingt ou cent*; but we say, *environ six-vingt*, *environ cent trente*, &c. and not *cent ou six-vingt*, *cent trente*, or *cent quarante*: when we know the number very nearly, we say, *dix ou douze*, *onze ou douze*, *douze ou treize*, &c.

We say, *trente et un jour* (thirty-one days), *vingt et un an*, *vingt et un écu*, &c.; but custom will have us say, *vingt et un chevaux*, (and not, *vingt et un cheval*;) and when the Noun Singular coming after the unit, is attended by an Adjective, that Adjective must (be Plural);—*il a vingt*

vingt et un an accomplis ; il y a quarante et un jour passés ; trente et un écu bien comptés.

N O T E.

The reason why the Noun in the above examples is Singular, is because it agrees with *un* immediately preceding it, which Noun is previously understood to follow the plural numeral in the Plural Number ; *vingt et un an* being put for *vingt [ans] et un an* : wherefore the Adjective referring to the Plural Noun as well as to the Singular, is, with propriety, made Plural ;—*Vingt [ans] et un an accomplis.* The exception of *vingt et un chevaux*, is a licence of custom, not easily to be accounted for.

The Cardinal Numbers very seldom take the Article ; the other numerals always do.

The Collective are commonly preceded by *un* or *une*, and must, besides, be followed by the Preposition *de* before the next Noun ; (i. e. the next Noun is in the Genitive Case :)—*J'ai douze noix, or une douzaine de noix : Donnez m'en la moitié, or le tiers : Prenez en une douzaine.*

From the Cardinal Numbers the Ordinal are formed, by adding *ième* to the last consonant of the Cardinal, and cutting off, therefore, the final *e* from those which have it ; as, from *deux, deuxième ; dix, dixième ; quatre, quatrième.* EXCEPT *premier* and *second.* In *neuf* the *f* is changed into *v, in neuvième.*

Though we say, *le premier et le second*, yet we don't say, *le vingt et premier, le vingt et second, but le vingt et unième, le vingt et deuxième.*

To the Ordinal Numbers belong these three ; *le dernier, (the last,) le penultième, or l'avant-dernier, (the last but one,) and l'antepenultième, (the last but two.)*

The

The French, to express the retinue of a person of superior rank and consequence to those composing it ; or the companions of a person, whose names do not require to be particularized with his ; use the Ordinal, importing the number formed by him and them, agreeing with the Disjunctive Pronoun :—*Il alla lui cinquième,* (he went *with four others*.) *Il s'enfuit heureusement lui troisième* ; (SULLY) : *Il est parti, lui douzième* ; *tout le reste suivra* ; (SEVIGNE'.)—(The Messieurs de Port Royal mark, in this instance, a similarity between the Greek and French languages, in their very excellent Greek Grammar :—Ξένος πέμπτος αὐτὸς ; Xénoclide, *lui cinquième*.)

Ordinal Numbers form also each an Adverb, with the addition of *ment* or *ement* :—*Premier-é-ment*, *second-é-ment* ; or, *deuxième-ment*, *troisième-ment* ; and so on to twenty. In the place of these Adverbs we may use, *en premier lieu*, *en second lieu*, *en troisième lieu*, &c.

We use the Cardinal and not the Ordinal Number, in dating and speaking of the years of the world, and then write *mil* and *cent*, and not *mille* or *cens* :—*L'an mil sept cent soixante huit de l'ère chrétienne* : but we say, *la seconde*, *la quatrième année de la cent dixième Olympiade*.

We also use the Cardinal Numbers when we name the days of the month :—*Le deux*, *le trois*, *le six*, *le onze*, *le quinze*, *le vingt*, *le vingt et un*, &c. : but we do not say, *l'un du mois*, but *le premier du mois*.

Observe that we put no Particle before *cent* and *mille*, as in English, except it is to denote *unity in opposition to many* :—*Un cent de plumes* ;

(one hundred pens, and not more:) J'en ai cent; j'en ai mille; (I have an hundred, a thousand.)

We say in common, *le onze*, *du onze*, *au onze*; although, to speak correctly, we should say, *l'onze*, *de l'onze*, *à l'onze*.

When two Ordinals come together in English, the first is rendered into French by a Cardinal:—*Le dix ou douzième*, the tenth or twelfth; *le sept ou huitième*, the seventh or eighth.

In denoting particular kings and sovereigns, we use the Cardinal Number without the Article:—*Henri trois*, *Henri quatre*, *Alexandre sept*, *Charles neuf*, *Benoit treize*, *Louis quinze*, &c.; but we say, *Henri premier*, *François second*, and never *Henry un*, *François deux*, &c. We say, *Charles quint*, (Charles the fifth, emperor of Germany) to distinguish him from the kings of the same name and number: we also say, *Sixte quint*, (Pope *Sixtus the fifth*.)

Huitaine and *nervaine* are said of the space of eight and nine days; *octave* is said both of the interval of eight days during which a church-festival is kept, and of eight musical notes together; *tercet*, *quatrain*, *sixain*, *buitain*, and *dixain*, are terms of poetry, said of staves of three, four, six, eight, and ten verses; *quinzain* and *trentain* are tennis-terms, signifying fifteen or thirty all, i. e. that the players have each fifteen or thirty of the game; *quinte*, *tierce*, and *quarte*, are card-terms, denoting a sequence of five, three, and four cards; *tierce* and *quarte* are also said of a periodical fit of anague returning every third or fourth day, *La fièvre tierce ou quarte*; *tricon* is another card-term, signifying a *print* or *pair royal*.

Besides

Besides the distributive numbers, *le tiers*, *le quart*, we also say, *la troisième & la quatrième partie*; then we say, *un cinquième, un ou deux sixièmes, un dixième*. *La dixième* is said only of the ecclesiastical tenth or tithe.

Demi (half) is a sort of Adjective, indeclinable when it comes before its Noun, making together a compound word:—*Une demi-heure*, (half an hour;) *demi-dieux*, (demi-gods.) But when the Noun comes first, it agrees with it in Gender, and is joined to it by the Conjunction *et*:—*Un muids et demi*; *une heure et demie*. *Demi* is said of things sold by the hundred:—*Un demi-cent de plumes*, (half an hundred of quills.)

Mi, another distributive word, used only with the following Nouns, with which it makes a kind of compound words, signifies also *moitié* (half,) or rather *milieu* (the middle;) but (which is worth observing) it requires the Article feminine, although the Noun before which it comes is masculine; and it is never construed without the Feminine Article, except in some proverbial expressions used without the Article:—*La mi-Aout*, *la mi-Mai*, (the middle of August and May;) *la mi-carême, à mi jambe, à mi chemin*.

* *Quartier* (the fourth part of a thing) is said of those things which are divided into parts; and *quarteron*, of those which are sold by the hundred or pound:—*Un quartier d'orange*, (the

* We say also, *un quartier, deux ou trois quartiers de loyer*, instead of *trois mois, six ou neuf mois de loyer*, (one, two, or three quarters rent;) and besides use *quartier* with *sémeſtre*, to signify three, and six months attendance on a prince:—*Etre en quartier, sortir de sémeſtre*.

fourth part of an orange ;) un quarteron de thé, (a quarter of a pound of tea ;) trois quarterons d'huîtres, (three quarters of an hundred of oysters.)

Quintal is an hundred weight :—Un quintal, deux quintal de poudre, (one or two hundred weight of powder.)

Millier is said of things sold by the hundred :—Un millier d'épingles, (ten hundred of pins.)

We say *couple* and *paire* for two, but not promiscuously. *Couple* is said of two natural things of the same kind which may be divided :—*Une couple d'oeufs, une couple de poulets.* *Une couple de guinées* is not an improper expression, being authorized by custom ; which will not however permit us to say, *une couple de gens, une couple de personnes.* *Paire* is said of two artificial things, which always go together, and are, in that respect, inseparable :—*Une paire de gans, de bas, de souliers; une paire de ciseaux, une paire de manches, &c.* We do not however say in French, *une paire de culottes*, as we say in English, *a pair of breeches*, but only *une culotte*.

Les vingt quatre is said of the twenty four violins belonging to the chapel of the king of France ; *les quarante*, of the forty members of the French Academy ; *les Sèptante*, of the Septuagint translators of the Bible ; and *les Quinze-Vingts*, of the three hundred blind persons belonging to the hospital of that name in Paris, founded by St. Louis.

Moreover, we say, *centenaire, millenaire, and millésime*, as also *sexaginaire, septuaginaire, octoginaire, and nonaginaire.* *Centenaire* is always an Adjective, joined with its Noun :—*Le nombre centenaire, the centenary number; prescription centenaire*

tenaire ou de cent ans, an hundred years' prescription.

Millénaire is sometimes an Adjective joined with its Noun,—*Le nombre millénaire*, the millenary number; and sometimes an Adjective used absolutely,—*Le premier, le second millénaire*, (the ten first centuries, or the ten next.)

Millénaire is said only of the dates set on medals, and is always an absolute Adjective, if not a real Noun:—*Le millésime de la médaille est effacé*, the date of the medal (the year in which it was coined) is erased.—*Sexagénaire, septuagénaire, octogénaire, and nonagénaire*, are Adjectives sometimes joined to their Nouns, and sometimes absolute:—*Un homme plus que sexagénaire*, (VERTOT) a man past sixty; *un bon vieillard septuagénaire*, a good old man of seventy: On voit peu d'octogenaires, les nonagenaires sont encore plus rares; we see few people of eighty years old, those of ninety are still more uncommon.

CHAPTER V.

§. Of the VERB considered in its Relation to its SUBJECT or NOMINATIVE CASE.

THE Verb has always a Noun or Pronoun (generally preceding it) for its Subject, with which it agrees in Number and Person:—*Le*

maitre en seigne & l'ecolier apprend ; je vois ; vous allez ; il croit ; ils disent.

And when the Subject is a *Relative*, it is of the same Person with the Pronoun Personal or Noun which it refers to, and consequently the Verb is also :—*C'est moi qui ai fait cela : C'est nous qui ne le croyons pas : C'est lui qui a fait cela : Je vois un homme qui boit.*

Many Nouns Singular will have the Verb in the Plural :—*Son esprit, sa douceur, et sa patience l'abandonnerent ; Ni na douceur ni la force ne l'y feront consentir.*

EXCEPT when the two Nouns Singular are separated by the Disjunctive Conjunction *ou* ; for then the Verb of the first Noun is understood, and that which is expressed is governed by the second :—*Ou la force ou la douceur le fera ; i. e. ou la force [le fera] ou la douceur le fera.*

If one of the Nouns be in the Plural, the Verb must agree with it :—*Le prince autant que ses sujets le souhaitent.*

But if the last Noun be preceded by *mais*, the Verb must agree with it, although it be Singular, and there be many Plurals before :—*Non seulement ses honneurs et ses richesses mais sa vertu même s'évanouit.*

N O T E.

It is the opinion of some, that when the last Noun is preceded by *tout*, the Verb must agree with it ;—*Ses biens, ses avantages et tout son repos fut sacrifié* : but the ear must then be consulted, it being as properly said,—*Les honneurs, les richesses et toute sa vertu s'évanouirent, as s'évanouit.* (CHAMBAUD.)

Tout, used absolutely, often follows a number of Nouns, as their collective substitute, comprising

prizing them in one general idea, and then the Verb agrees with it in the Singular:—*Dignités, richesses, amis, tout enfin l'abandonna.*

Sometimes too, in sentences similar to that just mentioned, *tout* comes first, and the Plural Nouns intervene between that and the Verb, as explanatory of its force:—*Il voulut que tout ce qui servoit à la guerre, les épées, les bâches, les piques, fut défisie.* (RAYNAL, V. ii. Histoire Phil. et Politique.)

In the like manner *rien*, as an universal negative, is used in negative sentences, as *tout*, an universal affirmative, in affirmative ones:—*Ni livri, ni les promenades, ni ma belle maison, rien de tout cela nem'occupe.* (SEVIGNE'.)

When the Verb has many Pronouns of different Persons for its Subject, it must agree with the First Person, rather than with the Second, and with the Second rather than with the Third;—*Vous et moi, nous sommes d'accord: Vous vous ferez des affaires, vous et lui.*

Observe, that in French the Person who speaks always names himself last:—*Vous et moi, nous sommes d'accord.*

These three Nouns, *une infinité, un grand nombre, or un nombre infini*, and *la plupart*, coming before another Noun Plural which they govern in the Genitive, require their Verb in the Plural:—*Une infinité de gens pensent; Un grand nombre de savans soutiennent celle opinion: La plupart de ses amis l'abandonnèrent.*

It is the same when these Nouns Singular come immediately before a Verb, without being followed by another Noun, in the Plural Number;

because it is always understood :—*Une infinité s'imaginèrent : La plupart coururent aux armes.*

But when they come before a Noun Singular, the Verb is put, as usual, in the Singular :—*Une infinite de monde y accourut de toutes parts : La plupart du monde fait cela.* Which shews, that it is not the Noun of multitude which determines the Number of the Verb, but the second Noun which is in the Genitive Case ; and this proceeds from this evident reason, that it is that of which the energy of the Verb is in reality affirmed ; whence we may consider the Genitive Case joined to the Noun of multitude, as forming a kind of compound word, or Noun, whose grammatical number is decided by the latter of its component words.

But this rule does not extend to other Nouns significant of a collected, aggregate quantity ; for they follow the general rule, of having the Verb to agree with them in Number as well as Person : *La moitié des ennemis deserta : Le tiers des vignes fut brûlé.* In which instances we see that the first Noun expresses the real, positive quantity of the enemy and vines deserting and burnt ; viz. *the half* and *the third*, and that these Nouns, *moitié* and *tiers*, though they express more than *one man* and *one vine*, yet they are to be considered as *the half* and *the third* of *one collective quantity*, or *whole*, and therefore are, in that sense, Singular.

We have said, that the subject generally precedes the Verb ; but it is made to come after it, (or between the Auxiliary and Participle, if the subject is a Pronoun, and the Verb is in a compound Tense) in a short sentence used by parenthesis,

parenthesis, and as an accessory member to the chief sentence:—*Tous les hommes sont fous, dit Boileau; enfin, disoit ce bon Roi, je ne me croirai heureux qu'autant que je ferai le bonheur de mes peuples.*

The subject is likewise better put after the Verb in the narrative discourse, when the Verb has no object (or Accusative Case,) or when the object is represented by one of these Pronouns, *se, que, le, où;* or when the Adjective *tel* comes before the Verb:

Sur cela parut le prince.

L'argent que m'envoya mon père.

A'notre arrivée se presenta un écuyer pour nous conduire.

La prison où furent mis lis malfaiteurs.

Tel parut à ses yeux l'éclat de sa beauté.

§. Of the Use of the TENSES of the INDICATIVE.

The Present Tense of the Indicative is used to denote that the subject in question exists, or is in transaction at that moment of time wherein we speak:—*Je vois; je pense;* i. e. at this present time of speaking, I am seeing or thinking.

The Imperfect (or * Extended) Tense, so called, because it *extends, imperfectly,* to the Present as well as the Past, without giving a complete idea of either, implying *continuous* time, passing but

* Παρα τατινός, as the Greek grammarians call it.

not past; is used to denote,—1st, That the thing of which we speak was present at a time past, which is specified:—*J'ecrivois quand il arriva*; i. e. at the very time when he arrived, which is a time specifically past, my act of writing was present, although with respect to the time in which I myself speak it is past.

2^o. To imply a thing which *was*, without any particular relation to time; and therefore it is used to denote, in a narration, the inclinations and qualities of the man we are considering:—*Tite étoit les délices des hommes, mon père étoit bel homme.*

But if we speak of people who are still living (for the last instances given are said of persons supposed to be dead) we use the compound of the Present:—*Mon père a été bel homme*; or, if we use the Imperfect Tense to the same effect, a particular time must be mentioned either before or after, which includes it:—*Ma soeur étoit belle dans sa jeunesse*; or, *avant d'avoir eu la petite vérole.*

3^o. The Imperfect is used to express a thing as uncertain, and which even, with respect to us, has something of a contingent future, at the same time that the action contained in it is necessarily implied to be past, in regard to the Verb in the succeeding member:—*S'il l'amoit, il l'épousercit; s'il venoit, vous lui deriez que j'ai été obligé de sortir pour affaire.*

The *Preterite* is used to denote a thing past, in such a manner that nothing remains of the time wherein it was done; and therefore it is a Tense particularly adapted to historical relations:

tions :—*J'allai l'année passée en France ; les Espagnols conquirent l'Amérique dans le sixième siècle.*

The *Future* denotes a thing which is to be, at a time not yet come :—*Nous aurons la paix ; we have not peace yet, but it is still to come.*

The *Conditional* (or *Uncertain*) Tense is used to imply a thing that *would*, *should*, *could*, or *might* be, in an unspecified and undefined time, as depending upon another uncertain contingency : it denotes the time to come, but *conditionally* :—*S'il demandoit cette place, où la lui donneroit.* The action of *giving* would take place, if at all, in an uncertain time, because it depended upon his *asking*, which is also uncertain, as being merely suppository.

The Conditional is also used in a sense partaking of the present, especially in sentences of wishing :—*Je voudrois [or] je souhaiterois qu'il fût beau Dimanche ? I wish it could be fair weather on Sunday ; pourriez-vous me prêter vingt guinées ? could you (or, can you) lend me twenty guineas ?* (Which conditional method of making a request seems to carry with it a greater appearance of modesty and respect than a Present Tense in a similar case ; for it implies, that the petitioner was rather wishful to know the reception that his demand would meet with, than that he was actually making it ; and if so, the sentence may be regarded as elliptical for—*Pourriez vous me prêter vingt guinées, si je vous priois de la faire (?)*)

The *Compound of the Present* is particularly proper, when an idea of the present time is com-

bined with that of the past; for this reason, when the thing spoken of is represented as happening in the day, week, month, year, or age, wherein we live, this Tense must be employed:

J'ai pris aujourd'hui de grandes nouvelles.

J'ai vu le Roi cette semaine.

J'ai été à la comédie ce mois-ci.

Les François ont battu les alliés cette année.

Notre siècle a produit de grands hommes.

Or in conversation, when we mention a thing which has been done and is past, but without adding any circumstance, whereby a precise time is especially denoted, or which may be supposed to have lately happened:—*Avez-vous vu l'opéra de Cadmus?* oui, je l'ai vu; (but we say,—*Je le vis l'année passée*, because *l'année passée* at once characterizes the time of the sentence to be one perfectly past.)

In like manner, when a circumstance past is related without any particular reference to time, it may be even indifferent to use either the *Perfect*, *Imperfect*, or *Compound of the Present*:—*Alexandre fut, étoit; or, a été grand capitaine*: because there the attention is fixed on the *man* and his *character*, without regarding at all *the time* in which he lived and bore it.

But the *Compound of the Present* is essentially necessary to be used as the Tense of the Verb of the past time, when the present time is specifically expressed, in any subjoined member, with which it has a manifest connection in point of time:—*J'ai fait cela, il n'y a qu'un moment;*

il y a plus de quinze jours que je ne suis sorti.

The Compound of the Imperfet imports, that in a certain specified time past, the thing spoken of was also past, and answers to the Latin *præter-plus-perfetū Tense*:—*J'avois écrit ma lettre quand il entra.* My action of writing, is here denoted not only as past in itself, but as also past with respect to another thing (his entering) which is itself past.

The Compound of the Perfect is used in the same sense as the Preterite; that is to say, it denotes a thing past, in a time of which no part remains to slide away; but it, besides, expresses, most commonly, a thing past before another; and is almost always construed with these Conjunctions, *quand*, *lorsque*, *dèsque*, *aussitôt que*, *après que*, &c.—*Quand j'eus fini ma lettre; or, après que j'eus fini ma lettre, elle me pria de lui en écrire une: Dèsque Aristide eût dit que la proposition de Themistocle étoit injuste, tout le peuple s'écrit qu'il n'y falloit plus penser.*

(But it would seem, that if the action represented as past before another, appears to have been done in any portion of time which is as yet incomplete, and in which the speaker still is, as it were, at the time of his speaking, then the Compounds of the Present must be used:—*Elle est venue me voir aujourd'hui; j'étois à écrire quand elle est entrée; quand j'ai eu fini ma lettre, elle m'a prié de lui en écrire une.*—Some mention will shortly be made of the Double Compound Tenses, of which an instance has just occurred in *j'ai eu fini.*)

The

110 A System of FRENCH SYNTAX.

The Compound of the Future is used to denote a thing which is yet to be, with regard to itself, but which will be past, with respect to another future thing, which is consequently to follow it in point of time:—*J'aurai soupé quand il viendra*; or, *quand j'aurai soupé il viendra*. My supping, which has not yet taken place, but is to be, will be over at the time of his coming, which is as yet only expected, and is to be after my supping.

The Compound of the Conditional suggests the idea of a thing which might, would, could, or should have happened in an uncertain time, provided some other contingency had taken place:—*Le ministre lui auroit donné cette place, s'il l'avoit demandée*.

Moreover, the Indicative has three other Tenses doubly compound:—*Il a eu bientôt fait*; *j'ai eu diné en un instant*; *quand j'eus eu fini ce que je fesois*; *elle n'auroit pas eu sitôt fait sans lui*; *j'aurois eu diné plutôt, si j'eusse su qu'il devoit venir à cette heure-là*. These double Compounds are liable to the same rules, respecting their application, as the single Compounds. They perhaps add some emphasis to the force of the simple Compounds, but are very seldom used; and I cannot, for my own part, see either their beauty or propriety; except in a sentence where particular compound Tenses are to be used, that there is occasion to signify a time still more past than the simple Compounds of the same Tense, which appear therefore in contradistinction with the double Compounds:—

*Quand j'ai eu fini ma lettre, elle m'a prié de,
&c.*

CRITICAL REMARKS on the past TENSES of the simple FORM.

One of the great difficulties in the French language is the due discrimination of the use and application of the simple *Présent* and *imperfect* Tenses of the Indicative: I shall endeavour therefore to lessen, if not entirely remove them; diffident, however, of my own qualifications to undertake so arduous a task, and open to the conviction of any errors which their acknowledged deficiency may occasion me to commit. It has been found necessary, in order to illustrate the subject, to interweave the consideration of the *Compound of the Imperfect*, although of not the same importance as that of the two simple Tenses before mentioned.

When we survey a narration with attention, and, after considering it in its aggregate, collective state, proceed to analyse its parts, separated from the whole, which they form in their union, we discover that there are some, which, connected with each other in regular progression like the links of a chain, are yet wholly independant one of another, holding an equal rank in the relation, and existing in the sentence in such a manner that the energy of no one of them can be regarded as derived from, or comprehended in, any other. Besides those parts, we find others, which interrupt the series of those we have just described, by carrying us back to something more remote than that order of events, which are the particular and immediate objects of our attention; and others, which divert or check our progress, by fixing our thoughts and enquiries upon some individual part, which they subdivide, qualify, and modify, until having sufficiently answered their purpose of explanation by this minute resolution and dissection, they cease to present themselves, and give us an opportunity of continuing that journey from which we were made to digress, or in which we were at least loopt, for a time. These parts, of different natures and properties, are the distinctions of Time; to discover which, constitutes the difficulty before hinted at.

Some standard of Time is necessary to be fixed, to which must

must be conformed each event which the writer or speaker means to present successively to his reader or hearer with equal claim to his attention. The most * natural standard of narrative Time is the *Simple Preterite*, for reasons which its nature, *perfect* and *unmodified*, and thence correspondent with its subject, which is supposed to be *wholly* and *absolutely past*, easily suggests. In this Tense are to be put all those great events which constitute, fundamentally, and trace out the principles of, the history we record. In the course of it, we may sometimes find it necessary to recur to events which took place *before* that or those event or events which it is the immediate business of the writer or speaker to commemorate. These must be by no means described by Verbs in the narrative Tense, but in the *Compound of the Imperfect*, (answering to the Latin *Præterpluperfect*) which implies Time by one degree more past than the Preterite. Moreover, as some of the great events of the narrative (recorded in the Preterite) may farther require illustration, by the mention of certain particulars existing, in accompanying, and distinguishing them;—if, for instance, a personage is introduced, whose character it is necessary to draw; if the energy of a narrative Verb extends itself to a variety of effects, and includes a number of component incidents; if one circumstance is represented as transacting during the continuance of another; in all such cases as the writer or speaker virtually digresses from or pauses in his relation, the Tense is changed into one, [viz. the *Simple Imperfect*] which being less past than that which carries on the thread of the history, shews that the subject matter of it is comprehended in, subordinate to, and dependant on, that part of the narration to which it is annexed: and so perfectly is this Tense adapted for the office just assigned to it, that we find it joined to other Tenses besides the Perfect, and the Present used for it, as may be seen hereafter in the course of the examples subjoined.

Cæsar, in his memorable letter to the senate, *veni, vidi, vici*, confined himself only to a simple narration of general facts; his Verbs are, therefore, all *perfect*: but had he designed to enlarge on his subject, and had observed, that he came on an enemy who had heard of his great achievements

* I say the *most natural*, and *not the only one*, because, by a kind of poetic licence, which frequently occurs, the *Present* is made the standard of narrative time.

and

and successes, and who were waiting only for his approach, that they might abandon themselves to flight; that accordingly he saw before him a body of men, whom his very name had intimidated, and were avoiding his very shadow, and that of course he conquered them, without making any exertion worthy of himself, since more were taken and killed in the pursuit, than were slain in the battle,—it is evident that he must have used the *Præterpluperfect* and *Imperfect* Tenses, to have expressed these particulars with propriety.

I will just add two or three examples from authors of established merit; by analysing the time of which, the subject may be rendered somewhat clearer.

Ainsi le Duc de Bragance, à la faveur de son nouvel emploi *parcourut* librement tout le Portugal; et ce fut dans ce voyage qu'il *jeta* les fondemens de son élévation.

Il avoit un équipage qui lui attiroit les yeux du peuple dans tous les lieux où il passoit; il écoutoit tout le monde avec beaucoup de douceur et de bonté: Il reprotoit l'insolence du soldat, et en même temps comblois de louange ses officiers; il les gagnoit par toutes les récompenses dont il étoit maître: Son honnêteté charmoit la noblesse; il la recevoit avec des distinctions obligeantes, & selon le mérite de chacun; enfin il repandoit des biens partout où il passoit; de sorte que ceux qui le voyoient, croyoient ne souhaiter que leur bonheur, en faisant des voeux pour son élévation. VERTOT, Rev. de Portugal.

Parcourut, fut, jeta, mark the progress of the narration:—from *il avoit* to the end of the sentence, merely the means by which he laid the foundations of his grandeur and elevation, and the circumstances contemporary with those means, are related: now as these are evidently mere parts of a whole, or otherwise particulars of one great circumstance, (and therefore answering to the idea of *parts*, as the great circumstance to that of a *whole*) which great circumstance is, *qu'il jeta les fondemens de son élévation dans ce voyage*, it follows, that they should be expressed in a Tense less, and imperfectly, past, as comprehended in the

the Perfect-Past-Time *jetta*, &c. the less in the greater: for it is evident that in the relation of those particulars, you are not advancing in the narration, but stopping, at some interesting point of view, to look about you, and examine into the manner in which he laid that foundation.

Perf. { Parmi les gens de qualité qui formerent cette assemblée, Dom Michel d'Almeida s'y fit distinguer: —

Imperf. { C'étoit un venerable Vieillard, qui —

Précédentes { avoit aguïs une considération extraordinaire par son mérité —

Imparf. { Il étoit indigné de la voire comme réduite en servitude par des usurpateurs. —

Précédentes { Il s'étoit soutenu toute sa vie dans ces sentimens avec beaucoup de courage et de fermeté sans que les prières de sa famille & les conseils de ses amis l'eussent pu obliger d'aller au palais, et de faire sa cour aux ministres d'Espagne: C'étoit par cette fermeté qu'il leur étoit devenu fort suspect.

Perf. { Ce fut sur lui que Pinto jeta les yeux pour se déclarer un peu plus ouvertement, sachant bien —

Imperf. { qu'il ne courroit aucun risque avec un homme de son caractère, qui étoit d'ailleurs d'un grand poids pour attirer la noblesse dans son parti. VERT. Ib.

Don Almeida distinguished himself in the assembly: this is a circumstance of the narration. You then pause in order to be introduced to his character: this delay is marked by the Imperfect Tense, implying continuous time, because that he was possessing those qualities, at the time that he distinguished himself, and that in effect they obtained him that distinction. In the course of his character

the author finds it necessary to go back to the particulars which happened previously to the time of his distinction—to the principles of his *past* life: this is expressed in a Tense more past than the Perfect, which is particularly reserved for those events of the narration which are more immediately brought under the observation of the reader. The narration is resumed by Pinto's fixing on him for a more open declaration of his designs; where we evidently see the chain kept up in the narration. “He distinguished himself in the assembly (for his eminent merit, consequence, and independence of spirit;) to him the conspirator chooses to unbosom himself first:” where then the Perfect Tense is of course used again; as the Imperfect is afterwards, when we are told Pinto's motives, which actuated him at the moment of casting his eyes on Michel d'Almeida.

Celicour, dès l'âge de quinze ans avoit été dans le monde ce qu'on appelle un petit prodige.

Il faisait des vers les plus galants du monde. Il n'y avoit pas dans le voisinage une jolie femme qu'il n'eut célébrée, & qui ne trouvât que ses yeux avoient encore plus d'esprit que ses vers.—C'étoit dommage de laisser tant de talents enfouis dans une petite ville: Paris devoit en être le théâtre, &c—

l'on fit si bien, que son pere se résolut à l'y envoyer.

Ce pere étoit un honnête homme, qui aimoit l'esprit sans en avoir, et qui admirroit, sans savoir pourquoi, tout ce qui venoit de la capitale; il y avoit même des relations littéraires; et du nombre de ces correspondans, étoit un Connoisseur, appellé M. de Fintac.

Ce fut particulièrement à lui que Celicour fut recommandé.” MARMONTEL, Connoisseur.

Previously to opening the narration, which begins with Celicour's

Celicour's father's sending him to Paris, some circumstances concerning his character and abilities are necessary to be mentioned; which, as antecedent to the narrative, are expressed in the Præterpluperfect Tense, implying time more past than the Perfect, the standard, as we have already said, of narrative time. From fifteen he had been a little prodigy:—in what instances? in that of making verses of the most gallant kind, and in that of possessing personal charms of the most attractive nature: Which particulars are recorded in the Imperfect Tense, made in that instance the dependent of the Præterpluperfect, as it is, in others, of the Perfect, and Present when used as its substitute. While in the enjoyment of these accomplishments of wit and beauty, it was suggested, that *it was a pity to bury talents like his in a small town*, and that *Paris ought to be the theatre on which they should be displayed*: As these ideas are evidently contemporary with those of his wit and beauty, it is therefore reasonable that they should be in the same Tense, viz. the Imperfect, which is accordingly the case. The narrative is then assumed with *his father's sending him to Paris*; but is suspended, until the character of him is given, and his connections in that city are mentioned, and particularly with M. de Fintac: All which incidents, agreeably to the rules before laid down, are in Imperfect Tenses. It is then again taken up with the declaration of *his being recommended to M. Fintac*; which is made in a Perfect Tense, as well as the mention of *his being sent to town*, the recommendation and sending being clearly “connected with “each other in regular progression,” but yet “wholly “independant one of another,” and “holding an equal “rank in the sentence,” as two distinct and successive events of the relation.

Such appear to be the differences between the Perfect and Imperfect Tenses; and we shall perhaps feel more sensibly the beauty and propriety of their respective application, by considering a piece of history lying before us, interspersed with these variously-past Tenses, as an highly finished portrait, wherein all the parts of the narration, expressed in the Perfect, appear like the bold outlines which trace out the picture: the characters of individuals, the particulars of circumstances first generally touched on in the relation, with all incidental and parenthetic members, always expressed in the Imperfect, represent the gracefulness

ness of attitude, the ornaments of drapery, the embellishments of colour, and all those finishing strokes, which though they do not add any new limb or feature to the figure, yet communicate energy and perfection to those first marked out by the contour.

§. Of the USE of the TENSES of the SUBJUNCTIVE.

The Present and Simple Perfect of the Subjunctive often imply a Future :—*Je ne crois pas qu'il vienne demain* : *Je ne savois pas qu'il revint* sitôt. The first instance requires no comment, as its meaning is evidently future at the first view : in the latter, we see that though the Verb *revint* is past with respect to us, yet with respect to *savois* it implies something future.

When the first Verb is in the Present or Future, the Subjunctive Verb is in the Present Tense, if we mean to imply the present or future time :—*Il faut*, or, *il faudra qu'ils soient plus attentifs*.

And in the compound of the Present, if we mean to imply the Past,—*Il suffit qu'un habile homme n'ait rien oublié dans ses entreprises ; les bons ou les mauvais succès ne doivent ni augmenter ni diminuer les louanges qu'il mérite.*

(But when a conditional member is subjoined, the time of the Subjunctive Verb is determined by that of the Verb of the conditional member.

1. If the conditional Verb is Present, the Subjunctive Verb is Present also :—*Je ne doute qu'il ne vienne si on l'en prie.*

2. If the conditional Verb is in the Simple Imperfect,

perfect, the *Subjunctive Verb* is in the *Simple Perfect* :—*Je ne doute pas qu'il ne vint si on l'en prit.*

3. If the *conditional Verb* is in the *compound of the Imperfect*, the *Subjunctive Verb* is in the *compound of the Perfect* :—*Je doute que j'eusse réussi si vous ne m'aviez secouru.*)

When the *first Verb* is in the *compound of the Present*, the *second* is generally put in the *Simple Perfect* of the *Subjunctive* (where the *Subjunctive Mood* is proper to be used) when we mean to express the *Present with respect to the first Verb* :—*On s'est servi d'ecorces d'arbres ou de peaux pour écrire, avant que le Papier fût en usage;* (where we may easily see that *fût* expresses a *Present with respect to on s'est servi*, by turning the sentence thus ;—*Le Papier n'est pas en usage; c'est pourquoi on se sert d'ecorces d'arbres, ou de peaux pour écrire:* Which amounts to the same meaning as the former sentence.)

When we mean to express the *Past with respect to the first Verb*, the *Subjunctive Verb* is in the *same Tense* with the *first Verb*, i. e. the *compound of the Present* :—*Il a fallu qu'il ait sollicité ses juges, et qu'il se soit informé de plusieurs autres affaires;* (he ought to have solicited his judges, and informed himself, &c. :) where *ait sollicité* and *se soit informé*, plainly denote time past, with respect to *il a fallu*.

When the *second Verb* expresses an action which *may be done at all times*, it may be put in the *Present of the Subjunctive*, although the *first Verb* be in the *compound of the Present* :—*Dieu a entouré les yeux de tuniques fort minces, transparentes*

rentes au devant, afin que l'on *puisse* voir à travers, (M. de OLIVET :) because the possibility of seeing extends, there, generally to time past, present, and to come, without being specifically confined to either ; and the Present, in that and similar cases, is to all intents and purposes an *Aorist of the Present*.

When the *first Verb* is in the *Imperfect Preterite*, *Compound of the Imperfect*, or in either of the *Conditionals*, the *Subjunctive Verb* is in the *Simple Preterite*, if we mean to express a thing *not past* :—*Il vaudroit mieux pour un homme de qualité qu'il perdit la vie, que de perdre l'honneur pour quelque action honteuse & criminelle*; Lycurge par une de ses loix *avoit défendu qu'on éclairât ceux qui sortoient le soir d'un festin, afin que la crainte de ne pouvoir se rendre, chez eux, les empêchât de s'enivrer*.

And in the *Compound of the Perfect*, if we mean to mark a *past event* :—*Tout gouvernement étoit vicieux, avant que la suite des siècles, et en particulier le Christianisme, eussent adurci et perfectionné l'esprit humain*. (M. l'Abbé TER-RASSON.)

The *Present*, *Simple Perfect*, and *Compound Perfect* of the *Subjunctive*, are employed in certain elliptical phrases ; that is to say, in which some words seem to be understood :—*Puissiez-vous vivre autant que Methusalem* ; for, *Je souhaite que vous puissiez vivre, &c* :—

Heureux, dit très bien Platon, l'homme qui peut, ne fut-ce que dans la vieillesse, parvenir à être sage & à penser sainement ; for, *si ce n'étoit que, &c* :—

Ce

Ce pauvre enfant avoit été tant à la gêne, que, n'eût-il commis que la moindre faute, on l'auroit fouetté que rien n'y auroit manqué; for, s'il n'a voit commis que, &c.

I have been indebted for the substance of this Section to Wailly's French Grammar abridged.

§. Of the Use of the INDICATIVE MOOD.

The Indicative with *que* is used after Verbs denoting *belief* or *certainty*; after all Verbs signifying to tell, foretell, say, see, foresee, conjecture, presage, declare, certify, notify, signify, intimate, set forth, suppose, presume, be sensible, perceive, bear, apprehend (in the sense of conceiving, for in that of fearing it governs the Subjunctive,) know, understand, hope, reckon, agree, confess, own, repute, publish, remember, forget, promise, conclude, fancy, imagine, judge; and in short, after every Verb expressive of the faculties of the understanding; and moreover, used in such a manner as to imply *belief* and *certainty* of the thing spoken of.

Je dis qu'il est ainsi.

Je présume qu'il est vrai.

J'avoue que vous avez raison.

Je sais que vous faites quelquefois des erreurs, &c.

Wherefore, although we shall find that many of the Verbs, expressive of some of the above significations,

significations, take a Subjunctive after them with *que*, when they are used with a negative, interrogatively, or so as to imply doubt and ignorance; yet when the negative and interrogation do not appear joined with doubt and uncertainty on the part of the speaker, the Indicative may be used: thus, when knowing positively that the peace is made, I wish merely in asking those about me concerning it, to know whether they are equally well acquainted with it, I would say,—Savez-vous que la paix est faite?

In conformity with the rules just laid down, the following Verbs *Impersonal* also govern the Indicative with *que*:

- * *Il semble*, it seems.
- Il paraît*, it appears.
- Il y a apparence*, it is likely.
- On dit*, they say, it is said.
- On croît*, it is thought.
- On croirait*, one should [think.]
- Il est*, with these Adjectives:
- { *avéré*, averred, af-
clair, clear. [firmed.]

- Il est* { certain, certain.
evident, evident.
constant, allowed to be
true. (Constat, Lat.)
indubitable, unquestionable.
manifest, manifest. [ble.
noire, notorious.
palpable, palpable.
sensible, plain, obvious to
sur, sure. [the senses.
vrai, true.
visible, visible, obvious.

As likewise after all Impersonal Verbs denoting a positive certainty.

N. O. T. E. ob doidw m̄o l̄n A
* Observe with respect to *il semble*, that it must govern a Noun or Pronoun, in order to admit of an Indicative with *que* after it; for otherwise it governs the Subjunctive:—

Il me semble [or, à Monsieur] que vous avez peur.

Il semble que vous avez peur.

The Indicative is likewise used after *qui*, placed between

between two Verbs when it does not denote any wish, want, or necessity.
Je plains une femme qui a un mechant mari.

As also after the Comparative of Adjectives:—

Il est plus bâible que je ne croyais.

And after these Conjunctions:—

ainsi que,	as good as,	jeudi que,	so that.
tout ainsi que,	just as.	aujourd'hui que,	as soon as.
de même que,	even as.	dès que,	
si,	if.	pourquoi,	why. [to pass that?
si bien que,	} so that.	d'où vient que?	how comes it
de sorte que,	} so that.	après que,	after that, when.
de manière que,	} in such a man-	depuis que,	(of time) } since.
de façon que,	} ner that.	puisque,	(casual) } seeing that.
tellement que,	so that.	vû que,	
comme,	} as.	attendu que,	considering that.
en tant que,	} as.	au lieu que,	whereas.
à ce que,	according as [or] to.	à mesure que,	in proportion as.
comme si,	as if, as though.	tant que,	as long as.
lorsque,	} when.	autant que,	as much as.
quand,	} when.	outre que,	besides that.
pendant que,	} whilst.	joint que,	add to that.
tandis que,	} whilst.	selon que,	} as, according
à cause que,	} because.	suivant que,	} as.
par ce que,	} because.	peut-être que,	perhaps.
à peine,	scarce, hardly.	d'autant que,	whereas, foras-

N. B. A point is followed by
que in the second part of the
sentence; and that que is
rendered into English by
than or but.

And others which do not immediately present themselves,
but which may be learnt by the perusal of good authors.

The Indicative is used after que, when put
for quand, lorsque, pourquoi, comme, peut-être,
parceque:—

La raison pourquoi il ne pouvoit venir alors, et
que les autres ne se soucident qu'elles d'attendre, &c.

Peut-être

Peut-être l'aime-t-il, mais qu'il ne veut pas l'avouer.
 César n'étoit encore qu'édile, qu'il fit faire secrètement la statue de Marius (VERTOR,) [for *laquelle*.]
 César was only edile, when, &c. &c.

§. Of the Use of the SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

The Subjunctive is used in a few sentences of *wishing* :—*Puissiez-vous vivre heureux ! Fasse le ciel que cela arrive ! Dieu m'en préserve !*

Also in one or two sentences expressive of *reluctancy, astonishment, and imprecation* :—*Que j'aïlle le voir après cet affront ! que je meure si cela n'est pas vrai !*

The Subjunctive with *que* is used after Verbs of *willing, wishing, commanding, permitting, prohibiting and hindering, asking, desiring, beseeching and entreating, fearing, doubting, suspecting, admiring, wondering, being glad and rejoicing, being sorry and grudging, denying ; after all Verbs expressive of some intention, desire, affection, passion, sentiment, or motion of the mind ; and generally after all Verbs used with negation or interrogation :*

Je souhaite qu'il réussisse.

Je veux que vous étudiez.

Je permets que vous alliez.

Je défends, absolument que vous offez de tels accentats.

Je crains que cela n'arrive.

Je doute qu'il le fasse.

Je ne doute pas qu'il ne le fasse.

Je soupçonne que les choses n'ailient pas comme il faut.

J'admire que vous vous y preniez de la sorte.

Je suis bien aise que vous soyez venu.

Je suis très mortifié que vous éprouviez de tels inconveniens.

Il nie qu'il l'ait pris.

Il ne nooit pas qu'il ne l'eût souvent averti que les desseins de César alloient à la tyrannie ; (VERTOT.)

Je désire qu'on puisse me convaincre de l'avoir fait.

Je suis surpris que vous osiez le faire,

Plut à dieu que cela fut.

Il entendoit qu'il prit une partie considérable dans le butin qu'il avoit fait sur les ennemis ; (VERTOT.) He meant, intended.

Il n'est guères arrivé qu'une armée Peruvienne ait attaquée la première, & il est arrivé souvent qu'elle mettoit fin aux hostilités ; (RAYNAL, Hist. Philosoph. & Politique.)

Agissez de manière ; or, en sorte que vous réussissiez ; or, faites en sorte que vous réussissiez.

(In this last instance, *agissez* and *faire* imply an *inclination* and *desire* that I have that you may succeed ; but when no such inclination or desire is implied by the Verb, we use the Indicative :—*Vous agissez de manière que vous réussissiez* ; *vous faites en sorte que vous réussissiez* ; where I merely observe it.

NOTE.

NOTE.

Observe, that when any of the above Verbs are attended by a Noun or Pronoun, then they require the next Verb in the Infinitive with *de*:

Je vous ordonne de faire cela.

Il vous demande seulement d'y aller.

Le ministre se repentit d'avoir proposé ce bill.

We also say, *Je veux apprendre, le François*; for the Verb *wouloir* cannot be construed with the Subjunctive, when the same Pronoun refers to that and the following Verb: indeed it is evident, that, *Je veux que j'aprenne le François*, can never be right, from the unnecessary circumlocution of the sentence.

Many of the Verbs (particularly those of saying, telling, declaring, and affirming) governing the Indicative in general, are sometimes made to govern the Subjunctive. When they merely express their natural import, they require to be followed by their proper indicative regimen; but when interrogation, negation, or an implication of doubt or ignorance, is added, it is much better, as being more correct, to use the Subjunctive, if however the next Verb (in English) be in the Present, Preterite, * Future, or their Compounds; for in any other Tense it must be left, in French, in the Indicative:—
Croyez-vous que le roi fasse la campagne? (do you think that the king *will make* the campaign?)
Je n'apprends pas qu'il soit guéri; (I do not hear that he *is* cured.) *Si j'entends dire qu'il soit arrivé;* (If I hear that he *is* arrived.)

* The Future English Verb in such cases *must* be put in the Present of the Subjunctive in French.

With *Impersonal Verbs*, naturally governing the Indicative, but under the influence of these grammatical accidents, there is *an absolute necessity* for the second Verb to be Subjunctive:—
Dire, écrire, prétendre, entendre, and perhaps some other Verbs, whose most common signification is that of *saying, writing, declaring, bearing*, are also used sometimes with the additional force of *advising, commanding, willing, intending*, and then they govern the Subjunctive:

Dites qu'on vienne de bonne heure; bid them come in time.

J'écris qu'on m'envoie de l'argent; I write to them [to desire them] to send me money.

Je prétends qu'on m'obéisse; I will be obeyed.

J'entends que vous lui fassiez des compliments de ma part; I mean that you should, &c.

Il semble, when it is not attended by a Noun or Pronoun, requires the Subjunctive after it:—
Il semble que vous ayez peur.

The Subjunctive is used after *quelque, quelques que, and quoique*, taken the sense of *whatever, and whatsoever*.

Quelques amis que j'aie.

Quels que soient les hommes.

Quoique je fasse.

The Subjunctive is used after *que*, when put for **si, à moins que, avant que, sansque, afin que, jusqu'à ce que, and de peur que*:

S'il le souhaite et qu'il m'en avertisse.

Je

Je ne serai point content que je ne le fache.

Je n'y irai point qu'elle ne soit venue.

Aprochez que je vous baise; je vous prie venir ici que je vous dise quelque chose.

Attendez qu'il vienne.

N'approchez pas de chien qu'il ne vous morde.

Depêchons nous que quelqu'un ne vienne.

After que, the Conjunction following the Comparative si:

Il n'est pas si fou qu'il ne fache bien ce qu'il fait.

After the Relative qui, following a Superlative or Negative, and generally after any case of that Relative, between two Verbs, provided some wish, want, desire, or necessity be denoted:—

Le meilleur ouvrage qui soit.

Je ne connais personne qui fasse plus de cas des habiles gens.

Il n'y a rien dont j'aie plus d'envie.

Choisissez une femme que vous aimiez et qui soit prudente.

The Subjunctive is also used after qui, when its Verb implies the purpose or reason of the former member; in the same manner as pour with an Infinitive would:—Tout le monde convint qu'il étoit juste d'envoyer dans les Gaules un senateur qui en pris le gouvernement, et le commandement des armées; (VIRTOT,) who might take; which might be expressed, pour en prendre, &c.

It is also used after *qui* and its relations, when referring to a *Noun* or *Pronoun*, joined with *seul*, *premier*, and *peu*, or after an *interrogation*:

Il est le seul qui ait trouvé l'art de saisir les ames, et les coeurs des hommes par leur foible.

Je suis le premier homme nouveau que vous ayez fait consul de notre temps.

Il y avoit peu de personnes qui ne courroient pour ainsi dire au devant des présages ; (VERTOT.)

Quel est l'insensé qui tiènne pour sûr, fût il à la fleur de l'âge, qu'il vivra jusqu'au soir ?

The Subjunctive is used after *si*, when the former member of the sentence has its Verb in the conditional Tense:—

Ce qu'il n'auroit jamais proposé s'il eût cru qu'on en fût convenu ; (VERTOT.)

J'aurois couru risque d'être fort mal élevé, si je n'eusse pas eu un oncle chanoine ; (GIL BLAS.)

In like manner, when a member whose Verb is *conditional*, is followed by a member in which a condition is expressed (although *without si*) in such a manner as that the second member is evidently and necessarily referable in its sense to the first, the Verb of the second member is *Subjunctive*:—*Il auroit encore bien voulu, m'enseigner la langue latine ; c'eût été autant d'argent d'épargné pour lui ;* (GIL BLAS.)

As also, when the second member expresses a conditional inference drawn from the first, whose

whose Verb is in a past Tense:—*J'avois dessin de le faire c'eût été fort mal fait.*

The First Person of the Present Tense of the Subjunctive is elegantly used, when it is attended by a Negative, instead of the Indicative, although without being governed by any thing before:—*Je ne sache rien de plus facheux que. Non pas que je sache.*

The Subjunctive Preterite is used, without any preceding government, in the place of conditional Tense, coming after *quand même*:—*Fût elle riche à millions, je n'en voudrois point, for, quand même elle seroit, &c.*

The following Verbs Impersonal govern the Subjunctive with *que*:

<i>Il faut</i> , it must, it is necessary.	
<i>il convient</i> , it becomes.	
<i>il importe</i> , it concerns.	
<i>il est impor-</i>	it is of mo-
<i>tant,</i>	ment.
<i>il est de conse-</i>	of conse-
<i>quence,</i>	quence.
<i>il n'y a pas moyen</i> , there is no	[way or possibility.
<i>il y a de l'bon-</i>	there is ho-
<i>neur,</i>	nour or
<i>il y a du deshon-</i>	credit,
<i>eur,</i>	dishonour or
<i>il y a de la gloire,</i>	discredit.
<i>il y a de la honte,</i>	there is
<i>il est à propos</i> , it is fit.	glory,
<i>il est de la bien-</i>	or shame.
<i>séance, or,</i>	it is be-
<i>il est bénissant,</i>	coming.

<i>Il est de la décence</i> ,	it is de-
<i>or, il est décent,</i>	cent.
<i>Il est</i> , with all these other	
	Adjectives.
<i>agréable</i> ,	agreeable.
<i>aisé</i> ,	easy.
<i>affligeant</i> ,	afflicting.
<i>beau</i> ,	fine.
<i>chagrinant</i> ,	vexatious.
<i>cruel</i> ,	cruel.
<i>dangereux</i> ,	dangerous.
<i>difficile</i> ,	difficult.
<i>divertissant</i> ,	diverting.
<i>doux</i> ,	sweet.
<i>douloureux</i> ,	grievous.
<i>dur</i> ,	hard. [sant.
<i>disgracieux</i> ,	unplea-
<i>ennuyant</i> ,	tedious.
<i>étonnant</i> ,	astonishing.
<i>facile</i> ,	easy.

<i>Il est</i>	<i>faible</i> , sorrowful.	<i>Il est</i>	<i>mal-aisé</i> , difficult.
	{ <i>glorieux</i> , glorious.		<i>mortifiant</i> , mortifying.
	{ <i>gracieux</i> , graceful, a-		<i>possible</i> , possible,
	{ <i>greceable</i> .		<i>plaisant</i> , odd, droll.
	{ <i>heureux</i> , happy.		<i>surprenant</i> , surprising.
	{ <i>honteux</i> , shameful.		<i>triste</i> , sad.
	{ <i>impossible</i> , impossible.		<i>vilain</i> , ugly.
	{ <i>indifferent</i> , indifferent.		<i>juste</i> , just.
	{ <i>malheureux</i> , unlucky.		<i>injuste</i> , unjust.

And with all Adjectives expressive of some passion, or affection, or desire of the mind, after the manner of the Verbs governing the Subjunctive.

N O T E.

Observe, 1st, That *il est*, with these Adjectives, may be turned thus:—*C'est une chose faible que cela soit ainsi*, for, *Il est faible que*, &c.

2dly. That the same Verbs Impersonal (except *il y a*) govern the Infinitive with *de*, when they do not the Subjunctive with *que*, which usually happens when they are attended by a Pronoun:—*Il est indifferent qu'il soit en Angleterre ou en Irlande*:—*Il lui est indifferent d'être en Angleterre ou en Irlande*.

The following Conjunctions govern the Subjunctive:

<i>afin que</i> ,	{ that, to the end	<i>à la bonne heure que</i> , I grant	
<i>pour que</i> ,	{ that.		{ that.
<i>avant que</i> ,	before.	<i>au cas que</i> ,	in case that (or)
<i>sansque</i> ,	without that.	<i>en cas que</i> ,	if.
<i>bien que</i> ,		<i>non que</i> ,	not that.
<i>quoique</i> ,	{ although.	<i>non pas que</i> ,	not but. [that.
<i>encore que</i> ,		<i>ce n'est pas que</i> ,	it is not but.
<i>soitque</i> ,	whether (and) or.	<i>pourvu que</i> ,	so, if, pro-
<i>supposez que</i> ,	suppose that.	<i>moyennant que</i> ,	vided that.
<i>Supposons que</i> ,	let us suppose	<i>à moins que</i> ,	unless.
	[that.]	<i>si ce n'est que</i> ,	
<i>posez le cas que</i> ,	put the case	<i>pour peu que</i> ,	if, never so lit-
	[that.]	<i>se peu que</i> ,	tle, in the least.
			<i>bien</i>

bien entendu que, with a	il s'en faut bien que, it is far
à condition que, upon con-	[provid that.]
cepté que, except that.	malgré que, for all that, in
bors que, I save that.	[spite of.]
finon que, but that.	nonobstant que, notwithstanding
de peur que, I fear that.	[ing that.]
drearante que, I left.	Dieu veuille que, God grant.
loin que, far from.	plaise or plus à Dieu que, would
bien loin que, very far from.	to God.
tant s'en faut bien que, it is so	A Dieu ne plaise que, God for-
[far from.]	bid.
	comme que, as, according as.
	jusqu'à ce que, until.

* Bien entendu que, and à condition que, are also construed with the Future and Conditional Tenses of the Indicative.

† Comme qu'on s'y prenne, (ROUSSEAU,) as people act.

§. Of the Government of V E R B S.

Verbs Active are always attended by a Noun or Pronoun, and sometimes by two : when they are attended by two, the one is the Object of the Verb (or the Accusative Case,) the other is its End (or Dative Case.) The word expressive of the End is always preceded by the Preposition à, except the Dative of Conjunctive Pronouns.

Object.

Je vous aime.

Object.

End.

End.

Donnez quelque chose à quelqu'un ; je vous donne

Object.

quelque chose.

Verbs Passive require the Prepositions de and

par, before the next Noun, used on the same occasions as *by*, *of*, *from*, in English :

La vertu est estimée de tous ; il a été tué par ses gens.

But *de* and *par* are not used indiscriminately after Passive Verbs.

When the Passive Verb expresses a mere operation of the mind, it is followed by *de*:

Vous êtes souhaité de tous vos amis.

But when it expresses a material action, or one which partakes of the sentiments of the soul, as well as of the movements of the body, it is then followed by *par*:

Rome fut bâtie par Romulus.

Votre discours a été loué par les plus habiles gens, &c. (RESTAUT.)

N O T E.

But when the Noun following the Passive Verb expresses the instrument or manner of the action, and not the agent, neither *de* must govern it, nor *par*, although the energy of the Verb be a material action; but *à* must be used; and that *à* is englisched by *with*:

Il a été tué [par ses gens] à coups de sabre.

The principal circumstance to be attended to in this section, is the Accidents of the Infinitive, with regard to its being governed by a Preposition or not; and by what Preposition, when it does take one before it. And as this is a point determined as well by Nouns and Adjectives, as by Verbs, they will naturally be included in this section; although the chapter to which it belongs,

longs, ~~but~~ generally of Verbs only. In order to render it still more compleat, we shall also subjoin the *Conjunctions governing the Infinitive.*

The INFINITIVE with *de.*

The following Verbs Active require the Preposition *de* before the next Infinitive. Certain of them are distinguished by asterisks, to denote that they take a Subjunctive with *que* after them, agreeably to the rules laid down on that head.

achever, to make an end of,
affecter, to affect. [finish.

affliger, to afflict.

abagrinier, to vex.

défoler, to vex, make one mad.

aprouver, to approve of.

arrêter, to stop, decree.

retenir, to keep from, restrain.

* *empêcher*, to hinder.

détourner, to deter from.

* *apprehender*, to apprehend.

* *craintre*, to fear.

attendrir, to soften, move to

[pity.

blâmer, to blame.

souprendre, to rebuke, reprove.

reprimander, to reprimand.

censurer, to censure.

gronder, to scold, chide.

cesser, to cease, forbear.

charger, to charge.

enjoindre, to enjoin.

* *commander*, to command.

* *ordonner*, to order.

* *défendre*, to prohibit, forbid.

choisir, to choose.

avertir, to warn, to tell.

conseiller, to advise.

convaincre, to convince.

décourager, to discourage.

décharger, to discharge.

déliberer, to deliberate.

déterminer, to determine, pur-

[pose.

résoudre, to resolve upon,

conclure, to conclude.

désespérer, to despair.

dégoûter, to disgust, put out

[of conceit of.

différer, to defer, delay, put

forcer, to force. [off.

dire, to say.

divertir, to divert, turn from.

rejoîrir, to make glad.

écrire, to write.

mander, to write word. i hot

édifier, to edify, give good

[examples.

éffrayer, to affright, alarm.

épouvanter, to terrify.

exempter, to exempt.

dispenser, to dispense, excuse.

embarrasser,

embrouiffer, to puzzle, entangle. [bars,
troubler, to trouble, disturb.
excuser, to excuse.
entreprendre, to undertake.
essayer, to try.
* *exiger*, to require.
feindre, to feign, dissemble.
finir, to finish. [strain.
gêner, to make uneasy by restraining.
hâter, to hate.
inspirer, to inspire.
fusciter, to put in mind of.
jurer, to swear, take an oath.
justifier, to justify, vindicate.
louer, to praise, commend.
méditer, to meditate, think
[of.
notifier, to notify, to let one know.
négliger, to neglect. [know.
omettre, to omit.
offrir, to offer.
oublier, to forget.
pardonner, to pardon.
* *permettre*, to permit.

persuader, to persuade; entitle.
plaire, to pity.
* *prier*, to pray, desire, beg.
* *conjurer*, to conjure, entreat.
* *supplier*, to beg, beseech.
presser, to press, urge.
* *demandez en grâce*, to ask as
[a favour.
prescrire, to prescribe.
présumer, to presume.
promettre, to promise.
professer, to profess.
recommander, to recommend.
redouter, to dread.
refuser, to refuse.
remercier, to thank. [braid.
reprocher, to reproach, upbraze.
proposer, to propose, move for.
summonner, to summon.
soupçonner, to suspect.
scandaliser, to scandalize.
l'avoient fait à quelqu'un [give offence to.
suffire, to suffice.
suggérer, to suggest.
surprendre, to surprize.
tromper, to deceive.

N O T E.

¶ *Prier*, we have just seen, requires *de* before the next Infinitive:

Prier quelqu'un de faire quelque chose.

EXCEPT before these four Verbs, *manger*, *déjeuner*, *dîner*, and *souper*, with which it requires *à*, under these restrictions:

* *Prier quelqu'un à dîner*, implies, that you give the person in question a *set*, formal *Invitation*: — ^b *Prier quelqu'un de dîner*, implies a sudden, accidental invitation: —

* *Il a avoyé me prier à dîner*: — ^b *Je me suis trouvé chez lui, comme il alloit se mettre à table*, & il m'a prie de dîner avec lui.

The following Verbs (for the most part Neutral)

(ter or Reflected) require the Preposition *de* before the next *Noun* or *Infinitive*:

User, { d'une chose, to use
se servir, } or make use of a
abuser, to abuse. [thing.
convenir, to agree to.
disconvenir, to disagree.
jouir, to enjoy.

juger d'proper, to think proper.
parler, to speak.

médire, to traduce, slander.
menacer de, to threaten with.
manquer de quelque chose, to
 want any thing.

profiter, to improve.
béfiter, to benefit. [your.

s'âcher and s'efforcer, to endeavor.
se contenter, to content one's

[self, to be satisfied.
s'abstenir de, to abstain from.

s'apercevoir, to perceive, think.
s'aviser, to think, bethink

[one's self.
se démettre d'une place, to re-

[sign a place.
s'informer de, to enquire about

[or] after.
se garder de, to take care, or

[heed, of.
se mêler de, to meddle with.

se moquer de, to mock, laugh at.
se rire and rire de, to laugh at.

se rejouir de, to rejoice at.
se repentir de, to repent of.

se rapprouver, to remember.
se soucier de, to care for.

s'embarrasser de, to puzzle,
 plague, distress one's self
 about any thing.

se vanter, to boast.
s'empêcher, to forbear.

se retenir de, to keep one's
 [self from.

se hâter, to hasten, hurry one's
 [self.

se dépêcher, to hasten, make
 [haste.

s'empresser, to hasten.
se précipiter, to overhasten

[one's self.
s'approcher d'un endroit, to
 come to, draw near, a place.

s'acquitter de son devoir, to
 [discharge one's duty.

s'accomoder de quelque chose,
 to make shift or hold with
 any thing.

s'empourrir d'une fille, to
 [fall in love with a girl.

s'affliger, to grieve, vex one's
 [self.

s'attrister, to be sorrowful.
s'inquiéter, to be disquieted,

[make one's self uneasy.
se chagrinier, to grieve one's

[self.
être consterné, to be dismayed.

se consoler, to comfort one's
 [self.

se déshabiter, to leave
se désaccoutumer, off doing

a thing.

se mesurer, to mis-
se défier, de trust or
 quelqu'un distrust

one.

s'emparer de, to take posse-
 sion of.

se saisir de, to seize upon.

se lasser, to grow tired.

s'ennuyer,

236 A System of FRENCH SYNTAX.

<i>s'ennuyer</i> , to grow weary.	<i>se robuste</i> , to despond, be dis-
<i>s'impatienter</i> , to lose one's [patience.	[couraged or disheartened.
<i>s'enorgueillir</i> , to grow proud, [be puffed up.	<i>se plaindre</i> , to complain.
<i>s'étonner</i> , to wonder, be [prized.	<i>se défier</i> , to desist.
<i>être surpris</i> , I amazed, or sur-	<i>se charger de</i> , to charge one's self with, undertake, the care of.
<i>s'ingérer</i> , to take upon one's [self.	<i>se retracter</i> , to retract, recant.
<i>se flatter</i> , to flatter one's self.	<i>se piquer d'une chose</i> , or to,
<i>L'indigner</i> , to be provoked, [incensed, exasperated.	<i>se piquer de faire quelque chose</i> , set up for, a thing.
<i>s'enrager</i> , pester to be mad [at.	<i>s'émanciper</i> , to take too much [liberty.
<i>avoir pitié de</i> , to have pity [on.	<i>se scandaliser de quelque chose</i> , be scandalized at any thing.

Observe, that most of these Verbs (if not all) which require the Preposition *de* before them, are commonly, and can always be, rendered into English by a Participle in *ing*, either absolutely, or with any of these Prepositions, *of*, *from*, *with*, &c.

Il m'empêche de la faire; he hinders me from doing it.

J'ai du moins le plaisir de la voir; I have at least the pleasure of seeing her, &c. &c.

These Impersonals, *il appartient*, *il convient*, *il sied bien*, *il dépend*, *il plaît*, require an Infinitive with *de*:

Il vous appartient de décider.

Il vous convient présentement de déclarer qui vous êtes.

Vraiment, il vous sied bien de vous conduire ainsi.

Il dépend de vous de le nommer général ou non.

Il me plaît de faire cela.

The following Adjectives, commonly construed with *être*, govern the Infinitive with *de*:

<i>capable,</i>	<i>capable,</i>	<i>de faire quelque chose.</i>
<i>incapable,</i>	<i>incapable,</i>	
<i>content,</i>	<i>contented,</i>	
<i>mécontent,</i>	<i>discontented,</i>	
<i>curieux,</i>	<i>curious, inquisitive,</i>	
<i>digne,</i>	<i>worthy,</i>	
<i>indigne,</i>	<i>unworthy,</i>	
<i>satisfait,</i>	<i>satisfied,</i>	
<i>sur, certain,</i>	<i>certain,</i>	
<i>être incertain,</i>	<i>uncertain,</i>	
<i>avide,</i>	<i>greedy, covetous,</i>	
<i>joyeux,</i>	<i>joyful,</i>	
<i>ravi,</i>	<i>everjoyed,</i>	
<i>aise, bien à l'aise,</i>	<i>glad, very glad,</i>	
<i>faiblé,</i>	<i>sorry,</i>	
<i>las,</i>	<i>tired,</i>	
<i>fatigué,</i>	<i>fatigued,</i>	
<i>ennuyé,</i>	<i>tired, weary,</i>	
<i>genté,</i>	<i>prudent, wise,</i>	

• en il sens de
laisser dérouler un
ouvrage si utile ?
SULLY.

As also these Nouns:

<i>en état,</i>	<i>in a condition,</i>	<i>de faire quelque chose.</i>
<i>être sur le point,</i>	<i>upon the point,</i>	
<i>à la veille,</i>	<i>on the eve, upon the</i>	

[brink.]

The following Nouns, chiefly construed with *avoir* without the Article, require the Preposition *de* before the next Infinitive:

avoir

298 A System of FRENCH SYNTAX.

<i>comme</i>	leave,
<i>permission,</i>	permission,
<i>envie,</i>	inclination,
<i>coutume (or</i>	<i>to use, or</i>
<i>être accoutumé)</i>	<i>to be accustomed,</i>
<i>besoin,</i>	occasion for, be in [need of,
<i>dessein,</i>	a design, to intend.
<i>avoir sujet,</i>	occasion, subject,
<i>lieu,</i>	reason, room,
<i>raison,</i>	reason, to be in the [right,
<i>soin,</i>	care, to take care,
<i>droit,</i>	a right,
<i>tort,</i>	to be in the wrong,
<i>affaire,</i>	to stand in need of,
<i>occasion,</i>	an opportunity,
<i>occurrence,</i>	

As likewise all Nouns, construed with other Verbs, either with or without an Article, provided they do not signify or imply inclination, difficulty, reluctancy, aptness, fitness, or unfitness :

Il m'a donné la peine de le faire ; he gave me the trouble of doing it.

J'ai eu beaucoup de peine à le faire ; I have had much trouble, difficulty, in doing it.

In the last instance, as *peine* implies difficulty, and consequent reluctancy, it therefore governs à.

N O T E.

The following list of Nouns, requiring à before the next Infinitive, will not be useless. They are alphabetically divided, for greater ease in referring to them.

Ambition,

A.

Ambition, ambition.
art, art.
avantage, advantage.
attention, attention.
audace, boldness, audaciousness.
avis, advice.
ardeur, warmth, eagerness.
avidité, avidity, greediness.
amitié, friendship.
amour, love.
attente, expectation.
arrogance, arrogance.
artifice, artifice.
adresse, skill.
action, action.
autorité, authority.
assurance, assurance.

B.

Bonté, goodness.
bonheur, good fortune.

C.

Conseil, counsel.
choix, choice.
coeur, heart.
courage, courage.
conveniency, convenience.
contrainte, constraint.
confusion, confusion.
confiance, constancy.
curiosité, curiosity.
chagrin, grief, chagrin.

D.

Désespoir, despair.
épit, despite.
désir, desire.
danger, danger.
déplaisir, displeasure.

E.

don, a gift.
le don de séconder les langues.
(Trompeur) glib.
dureté, ill-nature.

F.

Facilité, facility.
faveur, favour.
front, face, assurance.
fermeté, firmness.
force, strength.
hautineur, haughtiness.
façon, way, manner.
fureur, fury, madness.

G.

Grace, grace, favour.
glorie, glory.

H.
Hardiesse, boldness.
hasard, chance.
habitude, custom.
habileté, dexterity.
bonne, shame.
bonnétier, kindness.

I. J.

Impudence, impudence.
imprudence, imprudence.
insolence, insolence.
inconveniency, inconvenience.
impotence, disability.
intention, intention.

iniquitude.

140 A System of FRENCH SYNTAX.

inquiétude, inquietude.
joie, joy.
jugement, judgement.
justice, justice.

L.

Liberté, liberty.
loisir, leisure.

M.

Motif, motive.
moyen, means.
malice, malice.
malheur, misfortune.
maladroit, awkwardness.
mortification, grief; mortification.
maître, master.
manière, manner, way, mind.
manie, fury, madness.

Nature, nature.
nécessité, necessity.

O.
Orgueil, pride.
obligation, obligation.
ordre, order.

And here it will not be improper to observe, than any Noun or Adjective, derived from a Verb, requires the same Preposition before the next Infinitive or Noun, as its Primitive Verb. Thus *étonné* (amazed,) *refusé* (refused,) govern, the former the Genitive of Nouns, and the latter the Dative, and both the Preposition *de* before the Infinitive, because that the same regimens belong to their Verbs, *étonner* or *s'étonner*, and *refouler*. It is the same case with *forcer, obligation, présomption, derived from forcer, obliger, présenter, and so of the rest.*

P.

Pouvoir, power, ability,
puissance, } might,
présomption, presumption,
peine, pains, concern,
prétention, pretension,
patience, patience,
passion, passion,
plaisir, pleasure.

R.

Rage, rage.
ruse, cunning, craft.
risque, risk.

S.

Sagesse, wisdom.
satisfaction, satisfaction.
sens, sense.

scandal, scandal.
souci, care.

T.

Temérité, rashness.
V.
Vanité, vanity.
volonté, will.

Il est, followed by an Adjective, and *est* by a Noun; require the Preposition *de* before the Infinitive:—

Il est dangereux dans Londres de se reposer la nuit.

C'est le propre de la vertu de nous charmer.

When *c'est* comes before a Noun, followed by an Infinitive, it requires *que* before *de*, which precedes the Infinitive:—

C'est sagesse que d'avouer la faute.

(But observe, that when *c'est* comes before an Infinitive followed by a Noun, after which comes a second Infinitive, it will have no Preposition before the first Infinitive, and *que de* before the second:—

C'est être fou que de croire ce qui n'est pas concevable.)

De (preceded by *que*) before the next Infinitive, is used after the following terms of Comparison: *plus*, more. *meilleur*, better. *si peu*, so little. *moins*, less. *plutôt*, rather. *tant*, so much. *à moins*, unless. *si*, so. *telle*, such, like, &c.

Etudiez plutôt que de perdre votre temps.

Rien ne lui plaît tant que de soulager les malheurs des autres.

The INFINITIVE with *que à*.

The following Verbs require the Preposition *de* before the next Infinitive: *avoir,*

<i>avoir</i> , to have.	<i>être</i> , to be.	<i>aimer</i> , to love, to like.	<i>definir à</i> , to define.
<i>étreindre</i> , to hug.	<i>être</i> , to be.	<i>aimer quelqu'un</i> , to love one.	<i>donner</i> , to give.
<i>admettre quelqu'un</i> , to let one in.	<i>être</i> , to be.	<i>à se justifier</i> , to justify himself.	<i>disposer</i> , to dispose.
<i>[to give him a fair hearing.]</i>	<i>être</i> , to be.	<i>à se justifier</i> , to justify himself.	<i>dresser</i> , to train up.
<i>embardir</i> , to embolden.	<i>être</i> , to be.	<i>enseigner</i> , to teach.	<i>éclaircir</i> , to enlighten.
<i>apprendre à</i> , to learn from.	<i>être</i> , to be.	<i>apréter à rire</i> , to afford matter for laughter.	<i>employer quelqu'un à</i> , to employ one about.
<i>enseigner à</i> , to instruct.	<i>être</i> , to be.	<i>assigner à comparoître</i> , to summon.	<i>encourager</i> , to encourage.
<i>enseigner à</i> , to instruct.	<i>être</i> , to be.	<i>[mon, etc. to appear.]</i>	<i>engager</i> , to engage, induce.
<i>enseigner à</i> , to instruct.	<i>être</i> , to be.	<i>autoriser</i> , to authorize.	<i>exciter</i> , to excite.
<i>échapper à</i> , to seek, want, etc.	<i>être</i> , to be.	<i>condamner à</i> , to condemn.	<i>inciter</i> , to incite.
<i>contribuer à</i> , to contribute.	<i>être</i> , to be.	<i>coûter à</i> , to cost.	<i>exercer</i> , to exercise.
<i>convier</i> , to invite.	<i>être</i> , to be.	<i>épouser à</i> , to espouse.	<i>exhorter</i> , to exhort.
<i>instiller</i> , to instill.	<i>être</i> , to be.	<i>épouser à</i> , to espouse.	<i>accuser</i> , to accuse.
<i>dépenser à</i> , to spend in.	<i>être</i> , to be.	<i>demourer à</i> , to stay, tarry,	<i>incliner</i> , to incline.
<i>attendre à</i> , to delay, expect.	<i>être</i> , to be.	<i>attendre à</i> , to delay, expect.	<i>perdre</i> , to lose.
<i>aboutir</i> , to come to, touch.	<i>être</i> , to be.	<i>porter à quelqu'un</i> , to bring to.	<i>induire</i> , to induce.
<i>adhérer</i> , to adhere, cleave to.	<i>être</i> , to be.	<i>porter à quelqu'un</i> , to bring to.	<i>exciter</i> , to excite.
<i>applaudir à quelqu'un</i> , to applaud any one.	<i>être</i> , to be.	<i>porter à quelqu'un</i> , to bring to.	<i>pourvoir à</i> , to do—
<i>aider</i> , to help.	<i>être</i> , to be.	<i>présenter</i> , to present.	
<i>compatir</i> , to compassion.	<i>être</i> , to be.	<i>accoutumer</i> , to accustom.	
<i>condescendre</i> , to condescend to;	<i>être</i> , to be.	<i>* renfermer</i> , to confine.	
<i>contrevainir</i> , to act contrary to.	<i>être</i> , to be.	<i>Votre lettre me renferme à comprendre que, Spivigne.</i>	
<i>nuire à autrui</i> , to hurt others.	<i>être</i> , to be.		
		<i>plaire à quelqu'un</i> , to please one.	
		<i>N. B. Plaire takes de before an Infinitive.</i>	
		<i>se plaire</i> , or, prendre plaisir à faire quelque chose.	
		<i>déplaire</i> , to displease.	
		<i>obvier à des inconveniens</i> , to obviate difficulties.	
		<i>pardonner à quelqu'un</i> , to forgive, pardon.	
		<i>N. B. Pardonner takes de before the next Infinitive.</i>	
		<i>parvenir</i> .	

parvenir, to attain to, attain
[at, obtain.]

perfesser à faire, to perfess in
quelque chose, doing any
thing.

pourvoir au salut, to provide
de l'état, for, see
procéder à élire, to proceed
on, à l'élection, to, see
prétendre à une chose, to aim at,
[lay claim to, a thing.]

tendre, to aim at,
à un but, tend to
viser an end.

jouer à tout perdre, to venture
at losing every thing, stake
all at once.

se mettre à faire quelque chose,
to go, set about, doing a
thing.

penser à faire quelque chose, to
songer à chose, think
[of doing any thing.]

renoncer, to renounce. [like.
ressembler, to resemble, to be
rister à rien faire, to stand idle.

subvenir aux nécessiteux, to re-
lieve the needy.

insulter aux misérables, to in-
sult the unfortunate.

survivre à quelqu'un, to sur-
vive, outlive, one.

s'abandonner, to indulge, a-
bandon one's self.

s'occuper à passer son temps, to
spend one's time in, em-
ploy one's self about.

s'assujettir, to give up,
se livrer à chose, apply, ad-
dict one's self to—

s'abandonner, to give one's self
off to, to give up.

s'appliquer, to apply one's self.
faire à quelque chose, to suffice,
être assez pour, to be enough for.

M. B. Suffice governs the In-
itive with de.

s'accoutumer, to use, accu-
tomer, to train one's self
s'endurer à la fatigue, to in-
sure one's self to fatigue.

s'arrêter à des bavages, to stop
à telles, at, a-

[muse one's self with trifles.
s'engager, to take on one's self.

se fier à quelqu'un, to trust one.
se déterminer à, to resolve
se résoudre à, upon.

s'opposer, to oppose,
résister, to withstand, resist.

s'exposer, to expose one's self.
s'préparer à faire, to pre-
se préparer quelque chose

se disposer à chose, one's
self to do any thing.

s'obstiner à faire, to be
s'opiniâtrer quelque chose,

obsti-

nately
bent, or resolved to do a
thing.

se retrancher à, to confine one's

à faire des demandes, self to make
demands.

Observe, that most of those Verbs which re-
quire the Preposition *à* before them, are com-
monly, and can always be, rendered into English
by

by a Participle ending . . . with the Preposition *in* or *for*. —

Aidez-moi à faire cela, assist me *in doing*, &c.
Aprêter à rire, to afford matter for laughing.

The following Adjectives, commonly construed with *être*, require the Preposition *à* before the next Infinitive; as likewise all Nouns and Adjectives signifying *inclination*, *fitness*, and *unfitness*; all which will have *à* (*or au and eux*) before a Noun:

<i>adroit,</i>	<i>dexterous, skilful,</i>
<i>agréable,</i>	<i>agreeable,</i>
<i>agile,</i>	<i>agile, nimble,</i>
<i>admirable,</i>	<i>admirable,</i>
<i>ardent,</i>	<i>eager,</i>
<i>beau,</i>	<i>fine, handsome,</i>
<i>bon,</i>	<i>good,</i>
<i>diligent,</i>	<i>diligent,</i>
<i>doux,</i>	<i>sweet,</i>
<i>aisé,</i>	<i>easy,</i>
<i>facile,</i>	<i>inclined, bent,</i>
<i>enclin,</i>	<i>exact,</i>
<i>exact,</i>	<i>apt, addicted,</i>
<i>porté,</i>	<i>prone,</i>
<i>penché,</i>	<i>subject, liable,</i>
<i>sujet,</i>	<i>fit, qualified for,</i>
<i>propre,</i>	<i>ready,</i>
<i>prêt,</i>	<i>quick,</i>
<i>prompto,</i>	<i>able, skilful,</i>
<i>babile,</i>	<i>flow,</i>
<i>lent,</i>	<i>charming,</i>
<i>charmant,</i>	<i>affidn,</i>
<i>affidn,</i>	<i>affreux,</i>
<i>affreux,</i>	<i>effroyable,</i>
<i>effroyable,</i>	<i>horrible,</i>
<i>horrible,</i>	<i>terrible,</i>
<i>terrible,</i>	<i>dreadful,</i>
<i>hideux,</i>	<i>hideous,</i>

à faire quelque chose.

	<i>bold,</i>	à —
	<i>honest, polite,</i>	
	<i>dishonest, unpolite,</i>	
	<i>civil,</i>	
	<i>uncivil,</i>	
	<i>the first,</i>	
	<i>the second,</i>	
	<i>the last,</i>	
<i>être</i>	<i>*soul,</i>	<i>the only one.</i>

** Si j'étais seul
à tenir ce langage.
SEVIGNE'.*

The Impersonals *il y a* and *c'est à —*, require the Preposition *à* before the next Infinitive:—

Il y a du plaisir à chasser, or à la chasse.

C'est à vous à lui en parler.

N O T E.

Nevertheless, instances occur in authors of acknowledged merit, of *de* being used after *c'est à —*: *C'est à vous de régler nos destins.* ROUSSEAU's *Heloïse*, L. xii. l. 1. *C'est à la Renomée d'exercer son empire sur votre nom.* Œuvres de THOMAS.—However, I conceive this rather a relaxation of the rules of Grammar, which we should not be too fond of imitating.

VERBS sometimes taking *à*, and sometimes *de*, before the next INFINITIVE; and, in some particular Acceptations, omitting them both.

These eight Verbs take indifferently *de* or *à* before the next Infinitive:

commencer, to begin.
* *contraindre*, to constrain.
continuer, to continue.
discontinuer, to discontinue.

essayer, to try, attempt.
forcer, to force, compel.
couter, to cost.
manquer, to fail.

* *Contraindre*, when used *actively*, takes indifferently *de* or *à* before the next Infinitive; but

H

when

when it is used in the *Passive*, it always requires *de* :—

Contraignez-le à faire cela.

Je l'ai constraint de garder la maison.

Il fut constraint de se retirer.

Obliger, in the *Active Voice*, when signifying *to force*, requires *à* before the next Infinitive ; and when it signifies to *do a kindness*, it requires *de* : but in the *Passive* it always requires *de* :—

Vous m'obligerez à vous abandonner ; you will force me to abandon you.

Vous m'obligerez de vouloir bien m'excuser auprès d'elle ; you will do me a favour by being so kind as to excuse me to her.

Je suis obligé de vous abandonner ; I am forced to abandon you.

Prier sometimes takes *de*, and sometimes *à*, as we have already seen, p. 134.

Manquer, signifying *to fail*, requires *de* before the next Infinitive ; but in the sense of *forgetting* it requires *à* :—

Les malheureux ne manquent jamais de se plaindre ; never fail to complain.

J'ai manqué à faire ce que je vous avais promis ; I have forgotten to do, &c.

Dire, *désirer*, and *souhaiter*, which we shall presently see mentioned as generally taking no Preposition before the next Infinitive, take sometimes *de* before it :—

Allez lui dire de venir.

Je lui ai désiré de se trouver ici.

Je

Je souhaiterois de pouvoir vous obliger en toute occasion.

Venir, which in its usual signification as a Verb of motion takes no Preposition before the next Infinitive, sometimes takes à, in the sense of *to happen* or *to begin*; and sometimes *de*, when it implies the action of the Infinitive to be just finished:—

Venez boire; come and drink, (or, *to drink.*)

Quand il vient à ouvrir la bouche; when he chanced to open his mouth.

Quand il vient à pleuvoir; when it begins or happens to rain. (In which two last instances *venir à* seems to correspond in some measure to the Greek Verb *περιχώνω.*)

Je viens de recevoir des nouvelles bien fâcheuses; I have just heard, &c. literally, I come from hearing, &c.

Penser, (to think) we know, takes à after it; but in the sense of *to be like to do a thing*, (i. e. to be very near it) it takes no Preposition before the next Infinitive:—*Il a pensé mourir;* he has been very near dying.

The INFINITIVE without any PREPOSITION.

These following Verbs will have no Preposition before the next Infinitive:

* <i>Aimer mieux,</i> to have rather,	<i>déclarer,</i> to declare.
[to chose rather.]	<i>dire,</i> to say.
<i>Aller,</i> to go.	<i>assurer,</i> to assure.
<i>Venir,</i> to come.	<i>publier,</i> to publish.
<i>Envoyer,</i> to send.	<i>rapporther,</i> to report.

<i>affirmer,</i>	to affirm.	<i>s'imaginer,</i> to fancy, imagine.
<i>avouer,</i>	to confess.	<i>faire,</i> to make, cause.
<i>confesser,</i>	to own, confess.	<i>laisser,</i> to leave, let, permit.
<i>déposer,</i>	to deposite, say, tell.	<i>daigner,</i> to deign, to be [pleased.]
<i>soutenir,</i>	to maintain.	
<i>nier,</i>	to deny.	<i>penser,</i> to be like, or near.
<i>croire,</i>	to think, believe.	<i>prétendre,</i> to pretend.
<i>compter,</i>	to expect, rely; de- [pend on.]	<i>étre,</i> to dare.
<i>espérer,</i>	to hope.	<i>devoir,</i> to owe, to be to—
<i>désirer,</i>	to desire.	<i>pourvoir,</i> to be able.
<i>écouter,</i>	to hear.	<i>savoir,</i> to know.
<i>entendre,</i>		<i>souhaiter,</i> to wish.
<i>ouïr,</i>		+ <i>valoir mieux,</i> to be better.
<i>apercevoir,</i>	to perceive.	<i>vouloir,</i> to be willing.
<i>observer,</i>	to observe.	<i>il faut,</i> &c. it must, it is ne-
<i>considérer,</i>	to consider, behold.	[cessary.]
<i>espier,</i>	to spy.	<i>insinuer,</i> (SULLY) to insinu-
<i>reconnître,</i>	to acknowledge.	[ate, hint.]
<i>paraître,</i>	to appear.	<i>se trouver,</i> (Id.) to be found.
<i>sembler,</i>	to seem.	<i>témoigner,</i> (Id.) to testify.
<i>voir,</i>	to see.	<i>mener,</i> (FENDLON) to carry,
<i>regarder,</i>	to look at, behold.	[conduct.]
		<i>retourner,</i> to return.

* + *Aimer mieux* and *valoir mieux* will have no Preposition before the Infinitive immediately following them ; but when a member of Comparison is subjoined with *que*, the Infinitive of such member has *de* before it, (for this reason, because *que*, in the comparative sense of *than*, never comes before a Verb of the Infinitive Mood, without the intervention of *de* :)—

J'aimerois mieux travailler que de rester à rien faire.

Il vaut mieux mourir que de parvenir à une vieillesse honteuse.

Pour before the INFINITIVE.

Besides *de* and *à*, which we have observed to be construed with the Infinitive, *pour* is also prefixed to it, implying particularly the *design*, *end*, or *reason* of doing a thing: wherefore, whenever the English Preposition *to*, coming before an Infinitive, can be explained by *for to*, *in order to*, *with a design to*, with the Infinitive, or by *to the end that*, or only *that*, with the Indicative or Subjunctive, or *for* with the Gerund, it must be rendered into French by *pour*, (or sometimes by *afin de* with the Infinitive, or *afin que* with the Subjunctive, when a *future* design, end, or reason, is implied:)—

Il l'a fait *pour me faire de la peine*; he has done it [*in order*] *to make me uneasy*.

Il a été pendu *pour avoir volé* sur le grand chemin; he was hanged *for robbing* (*or having robbed*) *on the highway*.

Je l'irai voir demain; *afin de le convaincre* de son erreur; I shall go to-morrow *in order to convince him, &c.*

The Verb coming after *trop*, *assez*, *suffisant*, and *suffire*, always requires the Preposition *pour* before it:—

Il est *trop* sensé *pour faire cela*.

Elle n'est pas *assez* riche *pour épouser un duc*.

Le mérite ne *suffit* guères *pour réussir*.

NOTE.

One would at first sight suppose that *de* was used with *trop* in the following sentence from Montesquieu's *Esprit des Loix*:—" Charles Martel ayant distribué les biens de

" l'église à ses soldats, & les ayant données partie en fiefs,
 " partie en alleu, il se fit une especé de Révolution dans
 " les loix féodales : il est vraisemblable que les nobles qui
 " avoient déjà des fiefs trouverent plus avantageux de rece-
 " voir les nouveaux dons en alleu, et que les hommes
 " libres se trouverent encore trop heureux de les recevoir en
 " fiefs." But upon examining the sense of the passage we
 find it defective, and that the sentence is elliptical for—
 se trouverent encore trop heureux de les recevoir en fiefs
 pour les refuser comme tels : for otherwise the passage would
 imply that they were too happy as they were to receive them
 as fiefs ; which was not, by any means, the case.

¶ PARTICULARS, with respect to the Use of the French Prepositions *de*, *à*, and *pour*, as compared with the English correspondent Prepositions :—with respect to the Infinitive, beginning a Sentence with *de*, *à*, and *pour*, and without any Preposition at all :—and with respect to the due Discrimination of the Regimens of Verbs.

The relations which the English Prepositions *of*, *from*, *with*, *in*, *by*, *for*, and *to*, bear to the French Prepositions *de*, *à*, and *pour*, deserve well to be attended to by the English learner.

The English Participle in *ing* with the Prepositions *of*, *from*, *with*, (or the Infinitive, when it may be resolved by any of these Prepositions and the Participle) is rendered into French by the Infinitive with *de*.

The English Participle with the Prepositions *in* and *to*, (or the Infinitive which can be resolved after that manner) is rendered by the French Infinitive with *à*.

And the English Preposition *for* with the Participle,

Participle, (or the Infinitive so resolved) is rendered by the Infinitive with *pour*.

(The English Participle with the Prepositions *in* and *by*, is sometimes rendered into French by the Gerund, with the Preposition *en* :—*By* or *in doing that*; *en faisant cela*.)

Moreover observe, That *pour* is never used in French with a Gerund, as in English with a Participle, but always with the Infinitive :

That the English Participles, construed with *for*, are rendered into French by the Compound of the Present of the Infinitive or by a Noun ;—
Il a été pendu *pour avoir volé*, or *pour vol*; he has been hanged *for robbing*; the Noun denoting simply the action itself, and the Verb in the Compound Tense superadding, besides, the time of the action which is past :

That these three Prepositions, *de*, *à*, and *pour*, are not always put so immediately before their Verbs, as their correspondents in English, but some word or words may intervene, as Pronouns and some Adverbs, which must come immediately before the Verb :—*Pour vous pleinement convaincre*; to convict you fully, &c.

These Prepositions are also sometimes used before the Infinitive without any previous Noun or Verb to determine them; viz. at the beginning of a sentence :—

De vous dire comment cela est arrivé c'est ce que je ne puis. (Which sentence might be turned thus :—*Ce que je ne puis faire, c'est de vous dire comment cela est arrivé.*)

À comes, in like manner, at the beginning of a sentence, and is even, then, construed with

Verbs generally requiring *de*; but then à falls under some of the relations of disposition or inclination which (as will be seen when we treat particularly of Prepositions) are denoted by it: and à, thus used, can be resolved into English by *by* or *with* and a Gerund, or *if* and the Indicative:—

À en juger par les apparences; if we may judge of it by appearances.

À vivre comme il fait, il n'ira pas loin; by living as he does, he won't last long.

On diroit, à l'entendre, que—; to bear him, (or, if one was to hear him) one would say, &c.

As for *pour*, before an Infinitive in the beginning of a sentence, it always supports its character of denoting the *design*, *end*, or *cause* of doing a thing:—

Pour avoir pris tant de peines, il n'en est pas mieux récompensé; for taking so much pains, he is not the better rewarded.

The Infinitive can also begin the sentence without any Preposition at all before it, which is the case when we speak sententiously, or lay down general maxims:—

Pouvoir vivre avec soi même, et savoir vivre avec les autres, est la grande science de la vie.

And here we may also take occasion to observe a particular very necessary to be known, in order to write French correctly: Whenever in a sentence two Verbs come together joined by the

the enclitic *et*, great care must be taken (especially if they govern different cases of Nouns or Pronouns) to give to each of them its proper Case; placing a Noun after the first Verb, and joining to the second a Pronoun in the Case it governs; or repeating the Pronoun before each Verb, agreeably to the regimen they require: therefore we do not say in French, *cela plut et charma le prince*, as in English, that *pleased* and *charmed* *the prince*; because *plaire* governs the Dative, and *charmer* the Accusative; but we must say,—*Cela plut au prince et le charma*; or, *cela lui plut et le charma*.

Again, these constructions are false,—

Je veux et promets d'accomplir ma promesse;

Il fit des caresses, et donna sa bénédiction à son fils;

Je suis plus belle que mon frère, (a girl speaks;)

Je suis plus savant que ma sœur, (a boy speaks;)

Because in the first instance *vouloir* requires a different construction from *promettre*: the sentence should therefore be,—*Je veux accomplir ma promesse, et je le promets*, (or *de le faire*.)

And in the second, although *fit des caresses* and *donna sa bénédiction* both govern a Dative, yet the first Verb must have its particular Case as well as the second; and the sentence be,—*Il fit des caresses à son fils, et lui donna sa bénédiction*.

And in the third and fourth instances, *belle* and *savant* being each of a particular Gender, cannot agree with the two Genders mentioned in the sentence: we had better therefore use a circumlocution, and say,—

Mon frere est beau, mais je suis encore plus belle ;
 Ma soeur est savante, mais je suis encore plus savante ;

so regular is the French language in its concord and construction.

It is the same with two Prepositions ; each must have its separate Regimen, expressed or understood. For instance, we must render,—the one sat *above*, and the other *below*, me,—l'un s'assit *au dessus de moi*, et l'autre *au dessous* : where *au dessus* has its Regimen expressed, and *au dessous* understood.

PARTICULARS relating to the REGIMENT of certain VERBS.

Aider governs indifferently the *Dative* and *Accusative* of Pronouns :—*Aidez lui* (or *le*) à faire quelque chose.

N O T E.

If the change of Regimen makes any difference, it is, that when it governs the *Dative* Case, it signifies more properly *to share and divide the trouble with one*.

Avertir, being attended by two Nouns, governs the *Accusative* of the person and the *Genitive* of the thing ; or, if a Verb follow, the *Infinitive* with *de* :—*Avertir quelqu'un de quelque chose* : *Avertir quelqu'un de faire quelque chose*.

Charger has the same Regimen as *avertir* :—*Charger quelqu'un de quelque chose* : *Charger quelqu'un de faire quelque chose*.

Défendre

Défendre governs the Accusative of the thing, and the Dative of the person; or, with a Verb, the Infinitive with *de*; and it may be construed with the Subjunctive with *que*:—

D. A.

Je vous défends cette liberté.

Lycurge défendit aux Spartiates tous les luxes et les agréments de la vie.

D. A.

Je vous défends de le faire.

Je défends que vous fassiez cela.

Demander requires the Infinitive with *à* when it simply implies asking and demanding: but in the sense of desiring, beseeching, &c. it requires *de*; but in this sense we had better use *prier*:—

Il demande à manger; he asks to eat.

Il m'a demandé [or prié] de lui rendre ce service-là; he besought me to do him that service.

Prier also governs the Accusative of the person, and the Genitive of the thing:—

Prier quelqu'un d'une chose; to ask one concerning a thing, to ask a thing of any one.

Insulter governs the Accusative, when its Regimen refers to a person; and a Dative, when to a thing:—

Insulter quelqu'un: Insulter à la misère d'autrui.

We however say, and that with elegance too,—

Insulter aux misérables.

Mériter requires either the Infinitive with *de*, or the Subjunctive with *que*; it is the same case

with the Adjectives *digne* and *indigne* :—*Il mérite d'être préféré*, or *qu'on le préfère*.

Il est digne [or indigne] d'être considéré.

Il est digne [or indigne] qu'on lui rende service.

Prendre garde requires after it the Dative; and with a Verb, the Infinitive with *de*, or the Subjunctive with *que* :—

Prenez garde à cela; take care of that.

Prenez garde de tomber; take heed of falling; i. e. take care *not* to fall, or that you don't fall.

Prenez garde qu'il ne fasse cela; take care *lest* he should do that.

Observe, with respect to this Verb, that the French use no Negative after *prendre garde* when the next Verb is of the Infinitive, though it is translated into English with a Negative :—*Prenez garde de tomber*; take care *not* to fall, beware of falling.

Permettre and *refuser* govern the *Accusative* of the *thing*, and the *Dative* of the *person* :—

Il permet à son ami tout ce qu'il demande, et ne lui refuse rien.

They both require the Infinitive with *de*.

Persuader, attended by one Noun only, governs it in the *Accusative* :—*Persuader quelqu'un*; *persuader quelque chose*. When it is attended by two Nouns, it governs an *Accusative* of the *thing*, and a *Dative* of the *person* :—*Persuader quelque chose à quelqu'un*. And when it is followed by a Verb, it requires the Infinitive with *de* :—*Persuader quelqu'un de faire quelque chose.*

Diffaader

Dissuader and *détourner* govern an *Accusative* of the person, and a *Genitive* of the thing; and the *Infinitive* with *de*:—*Dissuader*, *détourner*, *quelqu'un de quelque chose*: *Le dissuader, detourner, de faire quelque chose*.

Instruire governs the *Accusative* of the person, and the *Genitive* of the thing:—*Instruire quelqu'un de quelque chose*.

Enseigner, *apprendre*, and *montrer*, govern the *Dative* of the person, and the *Accusative* of the thing:—*Enseigner la grammaire à quelqu'un, &c.*

Satisfaire governs the *Accusative* of the person, and the *Dative* of the thing:—

Il n'a pas encore satisfait ses créanciers.

Satisfaire à ses passions, à son ambition.

Lastly, *Verbs* and *Adjectives* governing the *Genitive* and *Ablative* in *Latin*, govern the *Genitive* in *French*; and those governing the *Dative* in *Latin*, govern it also in *French*:—*Meminisse aliquis rei; se souvenir d'une chose; Vesci pane et aquâ; vivre de pain & d'eau; Resistere alicui; résister à quelqu'un.*

C'est, personal.

Chambaud having, very incautiously, joined the personal applications of *c'est* to its impersonal ones, under the general head of the *Impersonal C'est*, it has been thought right to separate these different uses of this Verb, inserting here those occasions where it is personally applied, and leaving those in which it is impersonal to the Section on *Impersonal Verbs*.

The

The primitive Pronoun Demonstrative *ce*, joined with the Third Person Singular, Indicative, Present of *être* (*c'est*), refers to a person or thing already mentioned, or supposed to be so.—

Avez-vous jamais lu la Henriade de Voltaire? *c'est un ouvrage excellent*, (*it is an excellent work*.)

C'est une modèle de vertu, (*he or she is a pattern of virtue*.)

C'est bon, *c'est juste*, &c. (*it is good*, *it is just*.)

(Observe that the Noun which follows it has always *un*, *du*, or *des*, or the Article *le*, *les*, &c. preceding it:—*C'est un évêque*; *c'est du pain*; *qui est cet homme-la?* *c'est l'homme dont je vous ai parlé*.)

The only difference between *ce*, and *il*, *elle*, applied to persons, seems to be, that *ce* is something less definitive than the regular Pronouns Personal, and that in general the Noun following *il est*, *elle est*, except under particular circumstances, takes no Particle, whereas with *c'est* it would have *un*:—*C'est un évêque*, *il est évêque*.)

The Verb Substantive following *ce* is sometimes made plural:—*Je lis Horace & Virgile*, parce que *ce sont les meilleurs poètes Latins*: *Les astronomes qui prétendent connaître la nature des étoiles fixes, affirment que ce sont autant de soleils*.

Ce joined to a Third Person of *être*, refers also to a person or thing yet to be spoken of, and not previously mentioned:—*C'étoit un grand capitaine que César*, (where *ce* refers to *César*;) *c'est ne pas connoître les courisants que de compter sur*

sur leurs promesses ; where et tefers to the sentence compter sur leurs promesses ad nois il que ns dout à temps pour qu'on ne nous le signale —

The CONJUNCTIONS governing the INFINITIVE.

à,	{	to,	av lieu de,	instead of.
de,		to, for to.	loin de,	far from.
pour,		after.	excepté de,	except to.
après,		without.	avant de,	before.
sans,		to that degree, till.	avant que de,	
jusqu'à,			à moins de,	unless.
sauf à,		saving.	à moins que de,	
faute de,		for want of.	plutôt que de,	rather than
afin de,		in order to.		to.
de peur de,		for fear of.	And all other Conjunctions	
de crainte de,		for fear of.	ending with de.	

REMARKS on the INFINITIVE.

The Present of the Infinitive Active has frequently a passive sense :—

Il n'y a rien à voir ; there is nothing *to be seen*.
Cela n'est bon qu'à jeter ; that is only fit *to be thrown away*.

A Verb in the Infinitive may, as well as a Substantive, be the subject of the Verb of the sentence ; and when employed for this purpose, it is generally rendered by the verbal English *Noun* ending in *ing* :—

Manger et dormir font les plus grandes nécessités de la vie ; *eating and drinking are, &c.*

When an Adjective without a Substantive follows a Plural Verb, having two or more Infinitives for its subject, that Adjective is put in the Plural

Plural Number and Masculine Gender, which in such an application has the force of the Neuter: —*Manger peu, et dormir beaucoup* sont bons à la santé.

Infinitives sometimes assume the character of verbal Nouns, so far as to take the Article: —*Le dîner, le souper, le boire, le manger, le savoir, &c.*

N O T E.

Restaut considers the Infinitive so much as a Substantive, that he even declines it like one, thus;

Nom.	lire,	and gives the following instances of its application:	Lire est une bonne occupa-
Gen.	de lire,		J'ai envie de lire. [tion.
Dat.	à lire,		Je passe mon temps à lire.
Accus.	lire,		Je veux lire.
Ablat.	de lire,		Je viens de lire.

What he says concerning the *Tenses* of the Infinitive may also find a place here: I give his observations in his own words. " Ce qu'on appelle le *Present de l'Infinitif* ne se rapporte de soi-même à aucun temps déterminé, & on peut l'employer, suivant les circonstances du discours, aussi bien pour le *Passé*, & pour le *Futur*, que pour le *Present*: — Vous me *voyez écrire*: Vous m'avez *vu écrire*: Vous me *verrez écrire*.

" Mais quand on veut exprimer dans l'*Infinitif*, un *Passé par rapport au temps du Verbe qui le précède*, on se sert du Participe Passif, auquel on joint ou l'*Infinitif avoir*, ou l'*Infinitif être*, suivant la nature des Verbes: — Comme quand on dit vous me paroissez *avoir perdu* votre argent; où, j'ai cru être arrivé trop tard.

" Pour exprimer de même dans l'*Infinitif*, un *Futur par rapport au temps du Verbe qui est auparavant*, on joint l'*Infinitif devoir* à celui du Verbe dont il s'agit: — Comme quand on dit, je croyois *devoir suivre ce procès*; ou, je crois *devoir suivre ce procès*, &c."

§. Of the GERUND and PARTICIPLE.

I. The GERUND.

The Gerund is a certain inflexion of the Verb, always ending in *ant*; expressing its signification or energy in such a manner, as to render it *accessorial* and *subordinate* to that of the principal Verb of the sentence; describing some circumstance, manner, or means of its action. It is indeclinable, and generally preceded by the Preposition *en*. (RETAUT.)

Quelle importance main, en formant tous ces noeuds.

A pris soin, sur mon front, d'assembler mes cheveux ?

Qui empêche de dire la vérité en riant ?

2. The PARTICIPLE.

The Participle Present.

The Participle Present in *ant*, from its perfect similarity to Gerund, in formation, has been considered as the same by Chambaud; who has however been, in that particular, in an error.

We have already explained what Gerunds are, and in our definition shewn that they express the *modes* or *qualities* of the principal *Verbs* of the sentences in which they occur. On the contrary, the *Participles* in *ant* always refer to a

Noun,

Noun, expressed or understood, denoting, like *Adjectives*, some quality or attribute of it; differing, however, from *Adjectives* in this, that they have always the same regimen with their primitive *Verbs*:—*Un écolier sage préfère l'étude au jeu, un écolier sage préférant l'étude au jeu;*—and in being, for the most part, indeclinable, (except in a few instances, which will be here seen *), and where perhaps the *Participle* is rather to be considered as a verbal *Adjective*, usurping the regimen of its *Verb*, than any thing else; not to say that most of those occasions of its being declined, occur only in legal writings, which can by no means establish any standard of propriety for the grammarian.)

<i>un homme,</i> <i>une femme,</i> <i>des femmes,</i> <i>des hommes,</i>	{	<i>lisant de bons livres.</i>

Adjectives formed from Verbs, and commonly called Verbal Adjectives, however similar to Particles in form, differ from them in nature, in this essential point, that they take not, like the Participle, the regimen of the Verbs from which they are formed. Thus we say,—*Une*

EXCEPTIONS.

* *Une étoffe approchant de la vôtre.*

Les villages dépendants d'une seigneurie.

Une requête tendante à la cassation d'un arrêt.

Des filles majeures usantes et jouissantes de leurs droits.

Nos gens tenants nos cours de parlement.

La rendante compte.

Une humeur répugnante à la vôtre.

femme

femme suppliante, (where *suppliante* is a Verbal Adjective); but we cannot say.—*Une femme suppliante ses juges*; but must, in such case, use the Participle:—*Une femme suppliant ses juges.*

NOTE.

Left the distinction between the Gerund in *ant*, and the Participle in *ant*, should not be sufficiently clear, from what has been already said, I will subjoin Restaut's account of it, from whom I have borrowed many hints in this section, to correct Chambaud's error respecting these parts of speech.

" Le Géronatif ne désigne qu'une circonstance, une maniere, ou un moyen de l'action exprimée par le Verbe principal auquel il est subordonné; ailleurs que le Participe marque toujours ou l'état du sujet auquel il se rapporte, ou la raison et le fondement d'une action exprimée par quelque Verbe."

Quoique le Géronatif soit souvent employé, sans être précédé de la Préposition *en*, on peut néanmoins toujours la mettre avant quelque Géronatif que ce soit, excepté avant les Géronatifs *ayant* & *étant*; on ne peut jamais au contraire joindre cette Préposition à un Participe actif, sans altérer le sens de la phrase, & sans faire violence à l'usage.

Si je dis:—*Je suis persuadé que travaillant pendant six mois avec application, vous surpasserez votre frere*:—*Travaillant* n'exprime qu'une maniere ou un moyen de l'action signifiée par le Verbe, *vous surpasserez*, c'est à dire, un moyen de surpasser votre frere; & on peut y joindre *en*, sans changer le sens de la phrase, en disant:—*Je suis persuadé qu'en travaillant pendant six mois, &c.* Par conséquent *travaillant* est un Géronatif en cette occasion.

" Mais dans cette autre phrase, La plupart des grands du royaume jugeant la seconde croisade contraire au bien de l'état, voulurent en détourner St. Louis:—*Jugeant* marque le fondement de l'action exprimée par les Verbes, *voulurent détourner*: c. a. d. Que les grands du royaume voulurent détourner St. Louis de la seconde croisade, par ce qu'ils la jugeoient contraire au bien de l'état: & l'on ne pourroit pas dire, sans altérer le sens de la phrase, & sans faire violence à l'usage,

à l'usage, La plupart des grands du royaume, en jugeant la seconde croisade contraire, &c.

"On sentira encore mieux la différence d'un Géronatif & d'un Participe, en se servant d'un même Verbe avec ou sans la Préposition *en*. Par exemple, Ce n'est pas la même chose de dire, je vous ai vu *priant* Dieu, ou je vous ai vu *en priant* Dieu. La première phrase où *priant* est Participe, signifie : je vous ai vu lorsque vous priez Dieu ; et la seconde où *priant* est Géronatif signifie, Je vous ai vu pendant que je priois Dieu."

In French, we often express with a Relative Pronoun and a Tense of the Indicative, what is expressed with a Participle in English, in order to avoid the ambiguity which may arise from the French Participle being indeclinable: thus, instead of saying, Je les ai rencontrés *courant* la poste, (I met them *riding* post,) we say, Je les ai rencontrés qui *courroient* la poste; because *courant* may as well refer to the subject *je*, as to the object *les*:—Il a été chez elles, et il les a trouvées qui *buvoient mangeoient*; he has found them *eating and drinking*.

The following uses of the English Participle are turned into French, according as we shall here particularize :—

He is gone *a walking*; il est allé *se promener*.

A virtuous man does not leave off *doing good*, but when he gives over *living*; l'homme vertueux ne cesse de faire du bien, qu'en cessant de vivre.

His perfect knowledge of the French tongue is the reason of his being chosen for that embassy; la connoissance parfaite qu'il a de la langue

langue françoise, est la raison pourquoi on l'a choisi pour cette embassade.

Prevent him from doing mischief; empêchez le de faire du mal.

There is a pleasure in silencing great talkers; il y a du plaisir à fermer la bouche aux grands parleurs.

As the English, *I am dancing, I was dancing,* mark the Present and Imperfect Tenses, as much as, *I dance, I did dance;* so they are both rendered into French by, *Je dance, Je dansois.*

These particulars have been mentioned, in order to prevent the difficulties arising to learners from the difference of the Idiom of the two languages, and will be found useful to them for that purpose.

The Participle Past.

Participles of this tribe are frequently mere Adjectives, affirming something of a subject, and qualifying the Substantive. They are then always declinable:—*Un homme estimé; une femme estimée;*—*Des gens estimés; des nations estimées;*—*Il est perdu; elle est perdue;*—*Il est ravi; ils sont ravis de danser.*

As Participles, they serve to form the Compound Tenses of Verbs; and are sometimes used in short incidental sentences, like the Latin Absolute Case:—*Cela dit, il s'en alla, (hoc dicto, abiit.)*

Participles, when forming the Compound Tenses of Verbs, are sometimes declinable, and sometimes not.

They

They are declinable, when the Tense Compound, either of *avoir* or *être*, is preceded by any of the following Pronouns, in the Accusative Case, governed as an Object; viz. *que*, *le*, *la*, *les*, *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, *vous*, or by a Noun with a Pronoun interrogative:

Les peines que mes amis ont prises.

Les peines que mes amis se sont données.

Ses sœurs ont bien du mérite, je les ai toujours estimées.

Nous nous sommes trompés. (Men speak.)

Nous nous sommes trompées. (Women speak.)

Quelles peines a-t-il prises? or, *s'est-il données,* &c.

They are indeclinable, 1st. When the sense of the sentence is not completed by the Compound Verb, of which the Participle makes a part; but some other word or words must be added to complete it:

Les montres qu'il a fait faire.

Il ne les a pas voulu payer.

Il a dit toutes les raisons qu'il a pu voulu, or dû; (where *dire* is understood.)

Les tumultes qu'il a fallu appaiser.

Les raisons qu'il a cru que j'aprouvois.

Les personnes que j'ai vu qui étoient venues.

Le commerce l'a rendu ruissonne.

Les Anglois se sont rendu maîtres de la mer.

2dly. When the subject of the Verb comes after it:

Les peines qu'ont pris mes amis.

(Wherefore,

(Wherefore, as Rollin observes in his *Belles Lettres*, the following epigram is erroneous :

“ Pauvre Didon ! où t'a réduite,

De tes maris le triste sort !

L'un mourant, cause ta suite,

L'autre en fuyant, cause ta mort !”

Because *réduire* should not have been declined, as the Verb *a réduite* has its Nominative Case, *le triste sort*, coming after it.)

3dly. When the Pronoun is governed in the Dative, expressive of the End of the Verb ; and not in the Accusative, expressing its Object :

Elle s'est donné la mort ; where *se* is not the Accusative, but the Dative.

N O T E.

And here it would not be improper to fix a word or two, to account for the Participles being declinable in the manner that they are ; a circumstance which at first sight appears most unaccountable to the English scholar.—How is it consistent, that the Participle, whose energy is affirmed of the subject, should agree in Number and Gender with the object ? The propriety of it is evident, when we reflect, that by means of this agreement we come at the Gender of the *Noun* (as well as its *Number*) which is referred to by the *Pronoun* :—*Je vous ai estimé* ; I know that *vous* refers to a man :—*Je vous ai estimée* ; I know that it is the substitute of a woman :—*Je vous ai estimés* ; it describes two or more men :—*Je vous ai estimées* ; I am speaking to two or more women : and so of the other Pronouns, which do not of themselves define their Gender and Number. These observations will serve to place this peculiarity of the French language in its true light, that of a farther step to its perfection.

§. Of VERBS IMPERSONAL.

Of *C'est* and *Il est*.

These two Impersonals (or rather the Pronouns joined to *est*) cannot be used indiscriminately the one for the other. The following observations will lead to an explanation of their proper force and application.

I. *C'est*.

The Impersonal *C'est* is always used when the word *chôse* is expressed :

C'est de cette chose là que je parle.

When the question concerning the hour is of such a nature as to be followed by a Relative Member, *c'est* must be used :

Quelle heure est ce qui sonne ?

And whenever the question is asked with *c'est*, it must also be answered with it ; for this evident reason, because the same Relative Member is understood after it, as is expressed after the question :

Quelle heure est-ce qui sonne ? c'est une heure : c'est midi, i. e. c'est une heure, c'est midi qui sonne.

We also say, *C'est aujourd'hui Dimanche ; c'est demain Lundi ; c'est Mardi fête, &c.*

EXCEPT the few cases which will be mentioned by and by, wherein *il est* is used, *c'est* is always proper,

proper, in impersonal methods of speaking with *est*, before Nouns and Pronouns; care being taken to make the Pronoun which follows it Disjunctive:

C'est la loi qui l'ordonne.

C'est le laquais, or, la servante qui l'a dit.

C'est elle—c'est lui qui le croit, &c.

The Pronoun *ce*, used impersonally with *être*, is not only construed with all Pronouns Personal of the Singular Number followed by a Relative and a Verb which agrees with the Pronoun Personal; as,

C'est moi qui ai fait cela;

C'étoit vous qui aviez fait cela;

Ce fut lui qui fit cela;

but also with the Pronouns Personal of the Plural, followed by a Verb after the same manner:

C'est nous qui avons fait cela.

*C'est vous qui avez fait cela, (where *vous* is supposed to allude to more than one person.)*

C'est eux qui ont fait cela.

C'étoit les dragons qui ne vouloient pas obéir.

But what is more remarkable, this Pronoun *ce* is construed with the Third Person Plural of the Verb Substantive, at the pleasure of the writer or speaker:

Ce sont eux qui l'ont fait.

C'étoient les dragons qui ne vouloient pas obéir.

Ce furent les dragons qui ne voulurent pas obéir.

Ce seront les dragons qui feront cette attaque.

But when a question is asked with this Impersonal, it is always Singular :

Est-ce eux qui ont fait cela ?

Etoit-ce les dragons qui ne vouloient pas obéir ?

Fut-ce les dragons qui ne voulurent pas obéir ? &c.

N O T E.

Observe in the use of the Impersonal *c'est*, the following rules with respect to its Tenses, compared with those of the Verb in the Relative Member following it.

In all cases of Simple Tenses being used for the Relative Verb, similar Tenses may be used for *être* with *ce*:

C'est moi qui le dis.

C'étoit moi qui le faisois.

Ce fut moi qui le fis.

Ce sera moi qui le fera.

Besides this, observe that the Present Tense of *être* with *ce* may be used, when the Relative Verb is in the Compound of the Present, the Perfect, and the Future:

C'est moi { qui l'ai fait.
 { qui le fis.
 { qui le fera.

And the Imperfect, with the Compound of the Imperfect:

C'étoit moi qui l'avois fait.

This seems to be the most regular *ratio temporum* that can be laid down between *c'est* and the Relative Verb; although we shall not find it always observed, in the cases of *c'est* preceding a member beginning with *que* Conjunction, as will be seen presently, where popular use has overruled grammatical propriety.

C'est

C'est or c'étoit is sometimes used, followed immediately by *que*, which then has the force of *parce que* :—*C'est que je ne savois pas qu'il fut arrivé*; (it was, or it is, because I did not know that he was arrived.)

But in the following sentences, where a word of time intervenes between the Impersonal and *que*, *que* must be rendered by *that*:

C'est alors que je prends mes mésures; it is then *that* I take my measures.

C'étoit alors, or, dans ce moment que je le vis entrer.

The Impersonal *c'est* is often idiomatically used, having the Noun, which would be its subject if it was Personal, following it in the Genitive Case: this is mostly the Case when the Impersonal is immediately followed by *trop*, *trop peu*, or *assez*:

“ *Henri IV. fit brûler un Lollard; c'étoit trop peu d'un, si cette rigueur étoit juste; c'étoit beaucoup trop [d'un understood] si elle n'étoit que barbare.*” (Histoire de la querelle d'Edouard III. et des Valois, par M. Gaillard.) Henry committed one Lollard to the flames: one was too little, if that rigour was just; but too many, if it was merely an act of barbarity.

C'est assez de cette démarche imprudente pour vous ruiner; that imprudent step is sufficient to ruin you.

N O T E.

The Impersonal *il suffit*, which has in many respects the same force as *c'est assez*, has the Noun after it in the same case:—*Il suffit de cette démarche pour vous ruiner.*

Ce is sometimes omitted, and *être* used alone, in hypothetical sentences; although *ce* is necessarily understood, with *si*, in order to reduce the sentence to grammatical regularity.

J'en pourrois produire mille examples, n'étoit que je crains d'abuser de votre patience;—for, *si ce n'étoit que*—.

N'étoit sa bonne conduite; for, *si ce n'étoit*, &c.; if it was not for his good conduct.

N'étoit la crainte que j'ai de vous déplaire; if it was not for the fear of offending you; *si ce n'étoit la crainte*, &c.

In the use of this ellipsis, the Subjunctive Compound Perfect is employed instead of the Indicative Compound Imperfect:—*Je l'aurois pu convaincre, n'eût été que je craignois*; for, *si ce n'avoit été que je craignois*.

Il est.

Il est is used when the Verb is followed by an Adjective without a Noun, and with a sentence which is necessary in order to compleat the sense of the Adjective and Impersonal:

Il est bien facbeux d'être malade, et de n'avoir point d'argent.

Il est bon de se tenir sur ses gardes.—
(Which sentences might be turned, *c'est une bonne chose de se tenir sur ses gardes*; *c'est une chose bien sacheuse d'être malade, & de n'avoir point d'argent.*)

The Impersonal *il est* is used before Nouns denoting

denoting time or part of time, when no relative sentence follows it, either expressed or understood:—*Quelle heure est-il?*—*il est deux heures; il est tard; il est temps de partir.*

*It is, followed by with, is expressed in French by *il en est*, with the Genitive of the Noun:*

*It is with poetry as with painting; *il en est de la poésie comme de la peinture.**

*It is with women as with children; *il en est des femmes comme des enfans.**

Il est is sometimes elegantly used instead of *il y a*, which we shall presently treat of:

*Il est des amitiés véritables; for, *il y a des amitiés, &c.*—*Il est à craindre; for, il y a à craindre.**

Of *Il y a.*

Most phrases beginning in English with *some*, and the Verb *to be*, are expressed in French by the Impersonal *il y a*, and the Partitive Article:

*Some friends are false; *il y a de faux amis.**

*Some pains are salutary; *il y a des douleurs salutaires.**

Sometimes the Adjective is joined to its Noun, by means of the Pronoun *qui*, and the Verb *être*:

Il y a des douleurs qui sont salutaires.

N. B. Observe that *il y a* is used as well with Nouns Plural as Nouns Singular;

and that *avoir* in this impersonal form is never used but in the Singular; a circumstance which indeed is characteristic of Verbs Impersonal in general.

The Impersonal *il y a* is besides applied with propriety in sentences expressive of *Time*, *Space*, and *Number*.

1. To denote the quantity of *time* past since an event, the French begin with *il y a*; then comes the Noun of time, and its numeral prefix, and followed by *que*; next a Noun or Pronoun, standing as the subject of the Verb, which comes after it, and is in the Present or Compound of the Present, as the sense of the sentence may require:—*Il y a - trente ans - qu'il est mort*. Or the phrase may be transposed thus, with the omission of *que*:—*Il est mort il y a trente ans*; and it is rendered into English, *he has been dead these thirty years*; which is equivalent to the literal meaning—*it is thirty years that he is dead*.

In asking a question of time, beginning with *how long* in English, we must not say, *comment*, *comment long*, or *comment long tems*, but *combien-y-a-t-il que*; then the Noun or Pronoun which is the subject of the Verb that comes after it in the Present:

Combien y a-t-il qu'il est mort? How long has he been dead?

Combien y a-t-il que vous demeurez à Londres? How long have you been living at London?

And the answer must be made by *il y a*, joined to

to the Noun of time :—*Il y a dix ans*; or simply, *dix ans*.

NOTE.

The reason of this is evident.—*Comment* is an Adverb of *quality*, not of *quantity*; and the question is entirely concerning the latter. Moreover, observe that, *Combien y a-t-il qu'il est mort?* is elliptical for *combien de jours, de mois, d'années*, according as the speaker's idea of the portion of time in question is extensive or contracted: and that *que*, which occurs in the above sentences of time, has the force of *depuis que*.

When the Verb following *il y a* is in the Present, the sentence implies that the action expressed by the Verb is still in transaction; but when the Verb is in the Compound of the Present, the sentence implies that the action expressed by it was compleated in the time specified, and consequently that it is not now doing. The difference will more clearly appear by means of examples :

Il y a vingt ans qu'il voyage par toute l'Europe; he has been travelling for these twenty years all over Europe, [and is travelling still.]

Il y a vingt ans qu'il a voyagé par toute l'Europe; he travelled over Europe twenty years ago.

2. *Il y a* is used with propriety before words denoting the space of place :

Il y a cent vingt six lieues ou trois cens soixante milles de Londres à Paris; Paris is one hundred and twenty leagues, or three hundred and sixty miles distant from London.

But the question of space is asked thus:

Combien y a-t-il de Londres à Paris? How far is it from London to Paris?

N. B. Observe, that in French the place where the speaker is, or is supposed to come from, is named first with *de*.

3. Before words denoting Number:

Il y a trente millions d'âmes en France; and,
Il n'y en a que neuf ou dix en Angleterre.

The Participle in *ant* of the Impersonal *il y a*, is often used to begin a sentence with the same force as an Indicative Tense of *il y a*:

Des quatre personnes à qui il avoit commis la formation de l'édit, *n'y ayant* que le seul Calignon de protestant; SULLY; (which is the same as, *comme il n'y avoit* de protestant que le seul Calignon—.)

Of *Il fait.*

The Impersonal *il fait* is used with Adjectives, and some few Nouns, denoting the state of the weather and air, and certain accidents of time; and is englisched in such acceptation by *it is*:

Il fait

<i>Il fait</i>	<i>bean, or beau temps,</i>	<i>fine weather.</i>
	<i>chaud,</i>	<i>hot.</i>
	<i>froid,</i>	<i>cold.</i>
	<i>vilain,</i>	<i>horrid weather.</i>
	<i>crotté,</i>	<i>dirty weather.</i>
	<i>jour,</i>	<i>day.</i>
	<i>nuit,</i>	<i>night.</i>
	<i>obscur,</i> {	<i>it is gloomy.</i>
	<i>sombre,</i> {	
	<i>vent,</i> {	<i>windy.</i>
	<i>du vent,</i> {	
	<i>soleil,</i>	<i>sun-shine.</i>
	<i>clair de lune,</i>	<i>moon-shine.</i>
	<i>mauvais temps,</i>	<i>bad weather.</i>
	<i>brouillard,</i>	<i>foggy.</i>
	<i>sales,</i>	<i>dirty weather.</i>

The English Impersonal *it is*, construed with an Adjective and a Noun, or with one of these Adjectives, *good*, *bad*, *better*, *dangerous*, followed by a Noun or other word of place, is also rendered into French by *il fait*, followed by an Adjective, with a Verb in the Infinitive, either expressed or understood:

It is dear living at London ; il fait cher vivre à Londres.

It is dangerous being at sea ; il fait dangereux [etre] sur mer.

It is good being here ; il fait bon ici.

Of *Il faut.*

The Impersonal *il faut* requires after it either the Subjunctive with *que*, or the Infinitive without any Preposition. It denotes the necessity of

I 5. doing

doing something, and is englished by *it must*, *it is necessary*, *requisite*, *needful*, *one should*, *one ought* :—

Il faut que les officiers fassent leur devoir; the officers *must* do their duty.

Il faudroit que les enfans apprissent tous les jours quelque chose par coeur; children *should*, or *ought*, to learn something every day by heart.

Il faut before an Infinitive denotes the necessity of doing something, in general; but without specifying *who* is bound by it: then, of course, the Subject of the Verb *must*, may be *I* or *we*, *he*, *she*, or *they*, or *any body*, as the speaker may mean, and as the context may point out:—

Il faut faire cela; *one* or *we*, or *you*, *he*, *somebody*, *must* do that.

Il faut y aller; *I* or *you*, or *we*, or *somebody*, *must* go there.

Sometimes the Verb coming after the Impersonal is englished by the Passive Voice, and the Noun which follows the Verb in French, precedes *must* in English:—

Il faut instruire les enfans; children must be instructed.

All which sentences may be equally as well expressed with the Subjunctive:—*Il faut que cela se fasse*; or, *il faut qu'il*, or *qu'elle*, or *qu'on fasse cela*; or, *que nous fassions cela*.

Again, the necessity of having something is also denoted by *il faut*, before the Noun of the thing only, without any Verb: and *il faut* thus applied, is englished by, *one must have*, *it is necessary*

cessary that one should have ; or the thing named must be bad, or is necessary :—

Il faut de l'argent pour plaider ; one must have money to go to law.

Pour se pousser dans le monde, il faut des amis ; friends are necessary to advance one in the world.

And a Pronoun Personal Conjunctive in the Dative Case, coming between *il* and *faut*, appropriates the necessity or want to the person signified by the Pronoun, which is made the subject of *must* in English :—

Il me faut de l'argent ; I must have, or, I want money.

Il me faut un chapeau ; I must get a hat.

Il vous faut des livres ; you want books.

Il lui faut un mari ; she wants a husband.

The Impersonal *il faut* is used absolutely at the end of a sentence, with the Conjunction *comme*, or the Pronouns *ce qui*, before it ; in which case it implies *duty* and *decency*, and is englished by *should*, and sometimes *should do* and *should be* :—

Il ne se conduit pas comme il faut ; he does not behave as he should or ought.

Faites cela comme il faut ; do that as it should be, &c.

☞ There is, besides, a species of Impersonal, which may be called *Reflected*, composed of the Pronouns *il* and *se*, with the Third Person of any Verb Active, followed by a Noun with one of the Particles *de*, *du*, *des*, before it :—

Il se boit de bon vin en France, (there is good wine drank in France.)

Il se mange de bonne viande en Angleterre, (there is good meat eaten in England.)

It may not be improper to observe, that these expressions may as well be turned,—*On boit de bon vin, &c. On mange de bonne viande, &c.*

CHAPTER VI.

Of the FRENCH NEGATIVES.

WE have already treated of the position of the Negatives *ne*, *pas*, and *point*, with respect to the Pronouns Conjunctive and the Verb: We are now to consider their construction, as also that of several other Negatives in the French language.

Ne comes, as has been said, after the Subject, and immediately before the Verb; and *pas* or *point* after the Verb, if the Tense be simple,—*Je ne fais pas*; and between the Auxiliary and the Participle, if the Tense be compound,—*Je n'ai point su cela.*

But when the Verb is in the Present of the Infinitive, the two Negatives come together before it, after the Preposition, if there be any before the Verb:—

Je vous dis de ne pas vous mêler de cela.

Pour

Pour ne point répéter ce que nous avons déjà dit.

No is *non*, used at the end of a sentence, or absolutely, as in answer to questions; and *not* is *non pas*, used also absolutely, in the beginning of a sentence, and followed by *que* with the Sub-junctive:—

Croyez-vous cela? *Non.*

Je ne crois point cette nouvelle, *non pas* que la chose soit impossible, mais parce qu'elle ne me paroît pas vraisemblable.

Although *pas* and *point* may appear to be synonymous, yet *point*, in reality, denies with more emphasis than *pas*, implying *not at all*.

Pas is always used before these modifying words;

beaucoup, much;
peu, little;
mieux, better;
plus, more;
moins, less;
souvent, often;
toujours, always;
si, so;

tant, so much;
autant, as much;
trop, too much;
fort, } very;
très, }
extrêmement, extremely;
infiniment, infinitely;

and all Adverbs in general.

If there is any difference between asking a question with *pas* or *point*, it consists in *point* intimating that the subject of the question is entirely new to us; whereas *pas* implies that we have heard something of it before.

N O T E.

The following extract from the *Synonymes* of the Abbé Girard will illustrate the subject of *pas* and *point* in the clearest

clearest manner; I give it in his own words:—" *Pas* énonce simplement la négation; *Point*, appuie avec force, & semble l'affirmer: Le premier souvent ne nie la chose qu'en partie, ou avec modification; le second la nie toujours absolument, totalement, et sans réserve: voilà pourquoi l'un se place très bien avec les modificatifs [see the list just now given under *pas*] et que l'autre y auroit mauvaise grâce. On diroit donc n'être *pas* bien riche; et n'avoir *pas* même le nécessaire: mais si l'on vouloit se servir de *point*, il faudroit ôter les modificatifs, & dire—n'être *point* riche, et n'avoir *point* de nécessaire."

Besides these Negatives (to which add *ni* repeated, signifying *neither* and *nor*) the following words, which are of themselves negative terms, require moreover the Particle *ne* before their Verb, which is then without *pas* or *point*:

<i>personne</i> , nobody;	<i>quères</i> , but little;
<i>pas un</i> , not one;	<i>jamais</i> , never;
<i>aucun</i> , not any;	<i>rién</i> , nothing;
<i>nul</i> , none;	<i>mot</i> , word;
<i>nullement</i> , by no means;	<i>goute</i> , not at all: } But

these come under this rule only when *mot* is used with *dire*; and *goute* (which, by the bye, is never used at all with any other words) with *voir* and *entendre*:—

Je ne vois personne.
Vous ne dites rién.
Elle n'a aucun amant.
Il ne dit mot.
On ne voit goute.
N'entendre goute.

(EXCEPTIONS with respect to *rién* and *jamais*.)

With the Preposition *sans*, which implies exclusion and negation, *rién* is used without *ne* or any other negative Particle:—*Ils y restèrent sans rien faire*; which has the same force as, *et ils ne firent rién*.

In interrogative sentences where *rien* is used to signify something or any thing, the Negative [*ne*] is omitted:—

Avez-vous jamais rien vu de si beau ? Have you ever seen any thing so beautiful ?

When *jamais* signifies ever (which sometimes is the case) it is construed without a Negative:—

Si jamais j'y retourne ; if ever I return thither.)

The Conjunctions *à*, *moins que*, *de peur que*, *de crainte que*, lest or for fear that, (but not *de peur de*, *de crainte de*, which govern the Infinitive) will have after them *ne* alone, before the next Verb: as likewise these four Verbs; *empêcher*, to hinder, to prevent; *craindre*, to fear; *apréhender*, to apprehend; after which Verbs the following Verb is Subjunctive: but when they are used in the Infinitive, no Negative is joined with them:—

A moins que vous ne vouliez ainsi; unless you will have it so.

J'empêcherai qu'il ne vous nuise; I will hinder him from hurting you.

N O T E.

But it is to be observed with respect to the Verbs of fearing and apprehending, that it is only when we speak of an effect not wished for, that the second Negative, *pas* or *point*, is left out after the next Verb; for if we wish that the thing in question should happen, then the Verb which follows *craindre* and *apréhender* must be attended by two Negatives:—*Il craint que sa femme ne meure*; he fears lest his wife should die: *Il craint que sa femme ne meure pas*; he fears lest his wife should not die. The first instance is of an effect not wished for; the last, of one wished for.

Nier (to deny) requires also elegantly *ne* before the next Verb in negative sentences:—*Je ne nie*

n'e pas que je n'aie dit cela, I do not deny that I have said that.

In negative sentences where there is a Negative Subjunctive Member added to the principal Negative Member, that Subjunctive Member has but one Negative Particle ; which, however, has all the force of the two Negatives used upon other occasions :—“ *Il n'est pas possible que la patience avec laquelle ils souffrent ce traitement, ne les ait avilis aux yeux de la nation qui en est le témoin.* ” (RAYNAL, Hist. Phil. & Politique.)

In a similar case, where *rién* occurs in the Negative Subjunctive Member, *ne* is not added, because *rién* has the force of one Negative ; and we have seen that such members of such sentences require but one :—“ *On ne peut point dire qu'une chose ait rién de grand, quand le mépris qu'on fait de cette chose, tiént lui-même du grand.* ” (BOILEAU, Traité du Sublime par Longin.)

The Negative *ne* is used before the Verb which comes after these five words of Comparison, *plus*, *moins*, *mieux*, *autre*, and *autrement* :—

Il est plus sincère qu'il ne faudroit ; he is more sincere than he *should be*.

Elle est moins âgée que je ne croyois ; she is less old than *I thought*.

Il [or, elle] est tout autre que je ne pensois ; she is quite different from what *I thought*.

Vous avez fait tout autrement que je n'aurois fait ; you have acted quite differently from what *I should have done*.

Likewise after *que* and *si*, signifying *before* or

unless, or but in the latter member of a compound sentence, the former member of which is negative :—

Je ne la reverrai point, que sa mère ne m'envoie querir ; I will not see her again, before (or unless) her mother sends for me.

Je n'y irai pas s'il ne m'en prie ; I will not go there, if he does not (or, unless he does) desire me.

Il ne sauroit ouvrir la bouche qu'il ne dise quelque impertinence ; he cannot open his mouth, but he says (or, without saying) some foolish thing or other.

And before the Verb which precedes *ni* repeated in the sentence, which answers to *neither, nor* :—

Je n'aime ni à boire ni à fumer ; I love neither to drink, nor to smoke.

And when there is no Verb before *neither*, this English Negative is rendered by *ne* only, and *nor* by *ni ne* ; thus :—

Je ne bois ni ne fume ; I neither drink nor smoke.

N O T E.

When two Adjectives meet together in a negative sentence, they are not joined with the Particle *ni*, if they are synonymous, or express, both, the same thing in different words ; but only when they express two different or contrary things. When they are merely synonymous, they are joined by *et* :—*Je ne me souviens point d'hiver plus rude et plus froid que celui de 1740.*—*Dur* and *froid* are evidently synonymous, and therefore joined by *et* ; but in the following sentence the two Adjectives express very different ideas, and are therefore coupled by *ni* :—

Jamais on ne vit de saison plus pluvieuse ni plus froide.

And

And here I would just by the way make an observation respecting *sans* the Preposition, as connected with *ni*.

It is first of all to be observed, that in certain negative sentences, in which more than one Noun is expressed with negation, *ni* is repeated before each Noun, expressive of *neither* and *nor*; thus:—*Une Mer qui n'avoit ni fond ni rive*; (a Sea which had *neither* bottom *nor* shore, a bottomless and a boundless Ocean.) Now should the same sentence be expressed in fewer words by means of *sans*, it would be placed immediately before the first Noun, and have the force of the Subject, the Verb, and the two Negatives, *ne*, and the first *ni*, and in such capacity would require the second *ni* before the second Noun; and the sentence thus arranged and abbreviated, expresses the same thing as the former one:—“*La Finance qui étoit alors une mer sans fond ni rive.*” (SULLY.)—And in like manner, if the sentence with *sans* be expressed by Verbs and not by Nouns, the Verbs are Infinitive, the first having *sans* before it, and the second *ni*;—*Il s'en retourna sans boire ni manger*, (Id.) ; which is the same as, *n'ayant ni bu ni mangé*.

The Particle *ne* only, without any other Negative, is used with these five Verbs, applied in a negative sense; *osier*, to dare; *cesser*, to cease; *pouvoir*, to be able; *savoir*, to know; and *prendre garde*, to take care:—

Il n'ose me contredire.

Elle ne cesse de babiller.

Prenez garde qu'on ne vous trompe.

Il ne peut (or, sauroit) marcher; (he cannot walk.)

N O T E.

1st. Observe that it is only an elegance to use but one Negative with *pouvoir*, it being not improper to say,—*Il ne peut pas marcher*; and that when a question is asked, regard must be paid to the ear, in expressing or leaving out the second Negative, although it is most common to say,—*Ne peut-il pas faire cela?* which is therefore better than *Ne peut-il faire cela?*

2dly. When

zdy. When *savoir* is used in the sense of *pouvoir*, (which is never the case but when it is used in the Conditional Tense) it requires only one Negative, and never can be used with two:—*Il ne sauroit marcher*; *ne sauroit il faire cela?* When it is used in its proper signification of *knowing*, there is another distinction to be made; for if it implies only *uncertain knowledge*, it requires but one Negative:—as, *Il ne sait ce qu'il doit espérer de son procès*; that is, he is *uncertain of the event of his cause*; he hopes, but *knows not how far to hope*. But when its energy is *absolute and certain*, it requires two Negatives; as, *Il ne sait pas que le juge l'a condamné*; he is *wholly ignorant of it*.

Again, *savoir* requires but one Negative, when it meets with any of these Particles, *où*, *comment*, *combien*, *quand*, *quel*, *quoi*, *si*; which by their nature modify its energy:—

Il est je ne sais où.

Cela s'est fait je ne sais comment.

Là dessus est entré je ne sais quel homme.

Je ne sais s'il dit vrai, &c.

And here I cannot help inserting an extract from the *Synonymes* of the Abbé Girard, which will serve to point out the difference between *on ne peut*, and *on ne sauroit*; and which seems not entirely foreign to the subject of which we are treating:—“ *On ne sauroit* paraît plus propre pour “ marquer l'impuissance où l'on est de faire une chose: On ne “ peut sembler marquer plus précisément, et avec plus d'énergie “ l'impossibilité de la chose en elle-même: C'est par cette rai- “ son que la Particule *pas*, qui fortifie la négation ne se joint “ jamais avec la première de ces expressions; et qu'elle “ accompagne souvent l'autre avec grâce:—Ce qu'on ne “ sauroit faire est trop difficile: Ce qu'on ne peut pas faire, est “ impossible.”

zdy. *Prendre garde* signifies either *to take care*, or *to take notice*, *to mind*, *observe*, *consider*; and it is in the first signification only that it requires but one Negative before the next Verb; for in the others it requires two:—*Prenez garde qu'on ne vous trompe*; *take care that you are not cheated*; *Il prit garde qu'on ne le recevoit pas si bien que de coutume*; *he took notice that he was not received so cordially as usual*. And it is worth while observing here, that in the first sense of *prendre garde* it governs the Subjunctive, and in the latter the Indicative.

The

The sentence following *peut s'en faire*, if negative, takes only *ne* with the Subjunctive:—
“*Peut s'en faire*, quelle que soit aujourd’hui la misère, que je *ne me fasse* un scrupule de prêter au denier cinq.” Gil Blas.

The French use the Negative *ne* only, after the Impersonal *il y a*, followed by a Compound of the Present Tense:—*Il y a dix ans, que je ne l'ai vu.*

(But if any other Tense comes after the Impersonal, they use the two Negatives:—

Il y a un mois que je ne lui parle point.

Il y avoit un an que je ne la voyois point.)

And when a question is asked with *que*, signifying *pourquoi*:—*Que ne faites-vous cela?* Why don't you do that?

So also with the Adverb *plus* used absolutely:—*Je ne veux plus le voir;* I will never see him more.

(But when *plus* is used comparatively, that is to say, as a sign of Comparison before an Adjective, with or without *que*, two Negatives are requisite:—*Je ne le veux pas plus grand que l'autre.)*

N O T E.

It may not be improper here to mark an occasion where three Negatives are used, in certain sentences where *plus* occurs. When, after a Verb attended as usual with two Negatives, we would mean to express *any more*, we do it by *non plus*; but observe, that *any more* does not imply, there, *again*, but in the sense of *one thing or person more than another*: thus,—“*Les loix Romaines qui ne l'admettoient pas, non plus, perirent de même,* (MONTESQUIEU;) the Roman laws, which did not admit it *any more* (*than some other laws mentioned before*) perished in like manner.

Je n'irai pas en ville; et moi, je n'y irai pas non plus; (i. e. *non plus que vous*); nor will I go *any more* [*than you*].

Only

Only one Negative [*ne*] is used after *si* and *que*, in the sense of *unless* or *but* :—

Je ne saurois boire *si* je ne mange ; I cannot drink *unless* I eat.

Je n'y irai pas *qu'elle ne m'y invite* ; I will not go there *unless* she invites me.

Elle ne sauroit ouvrir la bouche, *qu'elle ne dise* quelque sottise ; she can't open her mouth *but* she says, &c.

N O T E.

It is indifferent in some few cases to use the two Negatives with *si*, or only one ; but they must be discovered by practice ; and in such instances I am of opinion that the ear must often decide. Thus we say,—*S'il ne me fait ce plaisir là, or, s'il ne me fait pas ce plaisir là, je ne me mêlerai pas de ses affaires* ; *S'il ne me paye cette somme, or, s'il ne me paye pas cette somme, je le ferai arrêter*.

Ne followed in the same sentence by *que*, expresses, and is englighed by *but*, or *nothing but*, or *only* :—

Je ne ferai *que ce qu'il vous plaira* ; I will do only what is agreeable to you.

Il ne fait *que jouer* ; he does *nothing but* play.

Je ne fais *qu'un repas par jour* ; I make *but* one meal a day.

But, likewise, in the middle of a sentence, is rendered into French by *que* and *ne*, or the Relative *qui* and *ne*, but without *pas* or *point*, and the second Verb is Subjunctive (conformably to our former rules :) as,—*Je ne doute point qu'il ne vienne* ; I don't doubt *but* he will come : *Y-a-t-il quelqu'un qui ne le sache* ? Is there any one *but* knows it ?

CHAPTER

CHAPTER VII.

Of ADVERBS.

I. Of the Formation of ADVERBS.

GENERALLY speaking, one can make as many Adverbs in French as there are Adjectives, by adding the termination *ment* to the Adjective; but with this previous distinction, that with Adjectives ending in *é* [acute] or in *i*, or *u*, it is to the Masculine Gender that *ment* is subjoined; but to the Feminine of those ending in *e* [mute] or in a consonant, it is added.

A. Mas.	Adv.
aisé	aisément,
hardi	hardiment,
absolu	absolument, &c.

A. Fem.	Adv.
sage	sagement,
doux, douce	doucement, &c.

N O T E.

Observe, that those Adjectives ending in *é* [acute] retain it in the adverbial form, and that the Adverbs formed from Adjectives Feminine which end we know in *e* [mute] have accordingly *e*, before *ment*; mute, EXCEPT these seven;—*aveuglément*, from *aveugle*; *commodément*, from *commode*; *incommodément*, from *incommode*; *conformément*, from *conforme*; *énormément*, from *énorme*; *uniformément*, from *uniforme*; and *impunément*, which however comes from *impuni*.

Chambaud,

Chambaud, whose ideas seem to have been remarkably deficient in point of arrangement, has considered the eight following Adverbs as derived from Adjectives ending in a consonant, and as having the é acute, which occurs between the termination *ment*, and the original Adjective, by virtue of a rule totally distinct from the EXCEPTION made above:—*Expréssément*, from *exprès*; *confusément*, from *confus*; *précisément*, from *précis*; *communément*, from *commun*; *importunément*, from *importun*; *obscurement*, from *obscur*; *profondément*, from *profond*; *profusément*, from *profus*: but the truth is, that these Adverbs are derived from the Feminines of those Adjectives, and being thus derived, come under the above-mentioned exception of the e [mute] being changed into é [acute]; thus,—

<i>M.</i> exprès	—	<i>F.</i> exprière	—	expressément,
confus	—	confuse	—	confusément,
précis	—	précise	—	précisément,
commun	—	commune	—	communément,
importun	—	importune	—	importunément,
obscur	—	obscure	—	obscurement,
profond	—	profonde	—	profondément,
profus	—	profuse	—	profusément.

For the propriety of this correction, I have only to appeal to any one who is tolerably conversant with the French language.

The five following Adjectives, ending either in a consonant or the vowel *u*, when changed into Adverbs, take, together with the termination *ment*, a circumflex accent over their last vowel, which is therefore somewhat lengthened in the pronunciation:

éperdu	—	éperdûment,
gentil	—	gentîment,
ingénû	—	ingenûment,
dû	—	dûment,
assidu	—	assidûment.

NOTE.

N O T E.

Except *dûment*, which is circumflexed because its primitive participial Adjective [*dû*] is so, and which therefore Chambaud might as well have omitted from the above list, all the other Adverbs are formed from the Feminine of their Adjectives, being exceptions to the rule of Adverbs formed from Adjectives in *i* and *e*; and this we have a proof of in the superscription of the circumflex, which is there a mark of *édition*. The true state of the case is then as follows :

<i>M. épèrdu, F. épèrdue — épèrdurement,</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{so} \\ \text{en} \\ \text{so} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{éperdûment} \\ \text{gentîment} \\ \text{ingénûment} \\ \text{affidûment} \end{array} \right\}$
<i>gentil, gentille — gentillement,</i>		
<i>ingénû, ingénue — ingénueusement,</i>		
<i>affidû, affidue — affidueusement,</i>		

I have here, I must confess, hazarded my own unsupported opinion, which must stand or fall as it is found to be right or wrong.

From Adjectives ending in *ant* and *ent*, Adverbs are formed by changing the termination into *amment* and *emment* (pronounced alike.) Thus from *constant* is formed *constamment*, from *evident*, *evidemment*, &c.

The following are of more irregular derivation : *Diablement*, from the Noun *diable*; *comme*, from the Conjunction *comme*; *incestamment*, from the Verb *césser*, with the Preposition *in* having a negative signification; *notamment*, from the Verb *noter*; *nuitamment*, from the Noun *nuit*; and *sciemment*, from *savoir*, (or rather from *scio*, the primitive of *savoir*.)

N O T E.

These following Adjectives are also used adverbially with some Verbs :

- | | | |
|---------------|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>baut,</i> | <i>parler baut,</i> | <i>to speak aloud.</i> |
| <i>bas,</i> | <i>parler bas,</i> | <i>to speak low.</i> |
| <i>clair,</i> | <i>voir clair,</i> | <i>to see clear, plain, to be clear sighted.
double,</i> |

double,	voir double, to see double, (not clearly or
trouble,	voir trouble, to be dim-sighted. [plainly.]
franc et net,	dire franc et net, to say or speak freely and [plainly.]
juste,	penser, parler, chanter juste, to think, speak, sing right.
fort,	frapper fort, to strike hard.
dur,	entendre dur, to be hard, or dull of hearing.
doux,	filer doux, to give fair words, to be submissive.
sec,	repondre sec, to make a sharp, rough, dry answer.
bon,	{ sentir bon ou mauvais, to have a good or bad smell.
mauvais,	{ trouver bon ou mauvais, to like or dislike. [smell.
ferme,	{ tenir ferme, to hold fast, hold out, persist. faire ferme, to stand one's ground, make a vigorous resistance.
droit,	marcher droit, to walk straight, act rigidly.
frais,	boire frais, to drink cold.
chaud,	boire chaud, to drink hot. [was fat.]
gras,	parler gras, (speak as if one's tongue
gros,	{ écrire gros et menu, to write a large or a small hand.
menu,	vendre cher, to sell dear.
cher,	aller vite, to go fast, with speed.
vite,	l'échapper belle, to have a narrow escape.
belle,	couper fin, to cut small.
fin,	

As likewise *nouveau* and *nouvelle*, *fraîche* (the Feminine of *frâts*, fresh,) and even the Noun *goutte*:

un nouvel arrivé,	{	one newly arrived,	{	for nouvelles.
une nouvelle arrivée,				

Des herbes toutes fraîches cueillies ; herbs fresh, or just gathered, or n'entendrs goutte ; not to set, or bear at all. [thered.]

Moreover observe, that there are certain adverbial methods of speaking, formed of Adjectives and Substantives joined with particular Prepositions, which it would be an almost endless task to enumerate, as there may be nearly as many of these as there are Substantives and Adjectives in the French language : such as these ; *de sang rassis*, *de gaîté de cœur*, &c.

2. Of the Position of ADVERBS.

We know that the genuine use of Adverbs is to qualify Verbs ; whence their name, implying their *belonging to Verbs* : they are therefore always placed in a situation beokening that connection, as we shall see by the following rules :

When Adverbs meet with a Verb, they are commonly put immediately after it, if the tense is simple ; —

Elle parle beaucoup :

And between the Auxiliary and Participle, if the Tense is compound ; —

Je suis fort porté à le faire ;

Il n'a pas encore appris sa leçon.

Monosyllables [*bien, mal, mieux, pis, &c.*] may indifferently come either before or after an Infinitive Verb : —

Bien chanter, — or, chanter bien.

Se mieux porter, — se porter mieux.

Se mal conduire, — se conduire mal.

When Adverbs serve as *qualifiers of Adjectives*, they immediately precede them : —

Il est bien fait.

Il est extrêmement heureux.

The Adverbs *jamais, toujours, souvent*, meeting with another Adverb, are placed first : —

Nous

Nous sommes souvent ensemble.

J'ai toujours mûrement considéré.

Je ne bois jamais trop.

Compound Adverbs always come after Verbs and Adjectives :—

Il tomba à la renverse.

Un homme [qui est] à la mode.

Méchant de gaîté de cœur.

Rien and tout meeting with a Verb, are placed like Adverbs with respect to the Verb :—

Il ne m'a rien dit.

Je ne veux rien manger.

Jai tout vu.

3. Of the Application of ADVERBS as SUBSTANTIVES.

Certain Adverbs, through the licence of custom, have usurped the place of Substantives, being, to all intents and purposes, governed, and governing, after the manner of those parts of speech. A simple detail of examples, without any farther observations, will be sufficient here :—

Le maître de Céans.

Les échos d'à Pentour.

La partie de deça.

" Ma colère ne tient à guères, et ma tendresse tient à beaucoup." SEVIGNE'.

Il y a prodigieusement de mal. VOLTAIRE.

Il épouse infiniment de sucs. RAYNAL.

Elle avoit médiocrement d'esprit. SULLY, &c.

The following, *debors*, *dedans*, *deffus*, *deffous*, *devant*, *derrière*, *environ*, become true Nouns in the most extensive sense of the word, taking the Article before them, being regularly declined, and admitting, some of them, of a plural termination :—

Les debors d'une place; the *outworks*, &c.

Cent debors fardès, MOLIERE; an hundred artfully-coloured appearances.

Cela tient au dedans de la boîte; that sticks to *the inside of the box*.

Le dedans souffre, VOLTAIRE; *domestic concerns* are suffering.

Le deffus de quelque chose; the *upper part of any thing*.

Gagner le deffus du vent; to get to windward.

Le deffus de la tête; the *top of the head*.

Avoir le deffus dans un combat; to get the better in an engagement.

Le deffus de quelque chose; the *lower part of any thing*.

Voir le deffous des cartes; to be in the secret, to know to the bottom of an affair.

Avoir du deffous; to be worsted or overpowered.

Le devant est tout usé; the *fore-part is quite worn out*.

Prendre les devans; to get *the start*, be before-hand.

Aller au devant de quelqu'un; to go to meet any one.

Le derrière; the *binder-part*.

Montrer le derrière; to fail in one's promise.

Les environs d'une place; the *adjacent places of a town*, &c.

N O T E.

It is to be observed with regard to the regimen of Adverbs, that those of them which are derived from Verbs or Adjectives, govern Nouns in the same Cases with their primitives:—

Diffréamement de ce que je vous montre.

Indépendamment des loix.

Relativement à l'acte du parlement.

Préférablement à toute autre chose.

C H A P T E R VIII.

Of PREPOSITIONS.

PREPOSITIONS are words invented to express the relation which things bear to one another.

Our principal design in this Chapter is to consider particularly the force of all those French Prepositions which are idiomatically used, with a construction and signification different from the English Prepositions naturally corresponding to them.

À

1. *À* denotes, First, (whether alone or joined to the Article) *the end of the action of the Verb*, and *the person or thing to which it tends*; (which relation answers to the Dative of the Latins, and has been heretofore qualified as such:)—*Donner une chose à quelqu'un: à qui est ce livre?* *Il est à moi: Parvenir à son but.*

K 3

2. Secondly,

2. Secondly, *à* denotes *the place where one is, and whither one goes*, (provided it be a town, &c. and not a province or country at large; see the chapter on the Article):—*Demeurer à Londres*, to live *at* or *in London*; *aller à la campagne*, to go *into* the country; *il demeure à vingt milles d'ici*, he lives [*at*] twenty miles from hence; *detournez à droite*, turn *to the right*, or *on the right*; *c'est à deux doigts de terre*, it is *within two inches of the ground*.

3. Thirdly, *à* denotes *time, and succession of time, and action*:—*Se lever à six heures*, to rise *at six o'clock*; *arriver à temps*, to arrive *in time*; *à demain*, against *to-morrow*; *à l'bonheur*, *au revoir*, till our next meeting; *parler à son tour*, to speak *in one's turn*; *se remettre peu à peu*, to recover by degrees (literally, little to little); *arracher brin à brin*, to pluck out, slip by slip, or piece by piece.

4. Fourthly, *à* denotes *the part of the body which is affected by pain or wounded*:—*Avoir mal à l'épaule*, to have a pain *in one's shoulder*; *être blessé à la cuisse*, to be wounded *in the thigh*.

5. Fifthly, *à* denotes *the nature of the condition and conduct of people, as also their posture, gesture, and action*:—*être à son aise*, to be *at one's ease*; *vivre à sa fantaisie*, to live *after, or according to, one's fancy*; *faire tout à sa tête*, to do every thing *of one's head*; *s'habiller à la Française*, to dress *after the French fashion*; *aller à pied ou à cheval*, to go *on foot or on horseback*;

horseback; se mettre à genoux, to go upon one's knees; recevoir à bras ouverts, to receive with open arms.

6. Sixthly, à denotes the quality, price, weight, and measure of things, and the aggregate number by which we compute:—Des bas à trois fils, three-thread stockings, or of three threads; de l'or à vingt carats, gold of twenty carats; du drap à dix-huit chelins la verge, cloth at 18 s. per yard; vendre de la viande à la livre, to sell meat by the pound; mesurer au compas ou au cordeau, to measure with or by the compass or line; ils se tuent à milliers, they kill each other by thousands.

7. Seventhly, à denotes the matter, instruments, and tools used in working:—Travailler à de la dentelle, to work in lace; bâtir à chaux et à ciment, to build with lime and mortar; peindre à l'huile, to paint in oil; aller à voiles et à rames, to go with sails and oars; elle travaille à l'aiguille, she works at her needle.

8. Eighthly, à denotes the games one plays at:—Jouer aux cartes, to play [at] cards, &c.

9. Ninthly, à is used in reckoning games:—Deux à trois, two to three; quatre à quatre, four all, six à point, six love, &c.

10. Tenthly, à is used in a very idiomatical manner, in sentences like these:—Il faut voir à qui l'aura; c'est à qui l'attrapera. (See these sentences considered under the Relative *qui*.)

11. Eleventhly, à between two Nouns appellative, or between a Noun and an Infinitive Verb, denotes the *manner* and *form*, and *species* of a thing, signified by the Noun first named, as likewise the *use for which it is designed* :—
Un chandelier à bras, a branched candlestick ; *un chapeau à grands bords*, a broad-brimmed hat ; *un clou à crochet*, a tenterhook ; *une boîte à mouche*, a patch box ; *de l'huile à brûler*, lamp-oil ; *une salle à manger*, a dining room ; *un moulin à vent et à eau*, a wind and water mill ; *une arme à feu*, a fire arm.

12. Twelfthly, à is sometimes used before the Noun, marking any particular disorder, when it follows some other word expressive of a remedy for it :—*On ne saigne point en ce pays aux rheumatismes*, (SEVIGNE,) people don't bleed in this country for the rheumatism.

13. Thirteenthly, à between two Nouns of Number signifies *between*, *about*, marking an uncertainty in the speaker, which is the Number which he particularly means of the two, or that it is a Number lying between the two mentioned :—*Un homme de quarante à cinquante ans* ; *il y a quatre à cinq lieues*.

14. Fourteenthly, à before an Infinitive most commonly denotes *what is proper to be done*, the merit or demerit of persons and things, their seeming capacity, aptitude, fitness, and disposition, state or condition, turn or duty :

Un avis à suivre, an advice fit to be followed.
Des

Des fruits bons à garder, fruits fit for keeping.

Une occasion à ne pas laisser échapper, an opportunity not to be lost.

Un homme à récompenser ou à pendre, a man who deserves to be rewarded or hanged.

C'est une affaire à le perdre, it is an affair that will ruin him.

Il est changé à n'être pas reconnaissable, SAVIGNE; he is changed so as not to be known again.

La presse étoit à mourir, the crowd was enough to kill one.

Ce que vous m'en disiez l'autre jour est à imprimer, SAVIGNE, is fit to be printed.

Il est homme à s'en fâcher, he is one who will take it ill.

C'est à vous à jouer, 'tis your turn to play, &c.

15. Fifteenthly, à coming before an Infinitive signifies sometimes *wherewith*, and sometimes the Verb may be resolved by the Indicative with *if*, or by a Gerund:—Verser à boire, to pour out to drink; il n'a pas à manger, he has nothing to eat; à en juger par les apparences, if we may judge by appearances; à vivre comme il fait, il n'ira pas loin, if he lives at that rate, or by living at that rate, &c.

N O T E.

Miscellaneous idiomatical Uses of à.

Etre à l'abri, to be sheltered; se tenir à couvert, to keep under cover; tenir à honneur, to hold for, reckon as an honour; reputé à injure, to deem it an injury; mettre aux arrêts, to put under arrest; à votre avis, in your opinion;

nion ; à son compte, by his account ; à ce qu'il me semble, as far as, by what, I apprehend ; parler à tort et à travers, to speak at random ; marcher à tâtons, to go groping along in the dark ; je suis ici à l'attendre depuis deux heures, il est encore à revenir ici ; I am here waiting for him these two hours, and he is still to return (i. e. he is not yet come back) ; à cela près, nous voilà d'accord, excepting that, &c. ; elle refuse tout à plat, she flatly refuses ; me voilà à pleurer, there I fall a crying, &c. &c.

De.

De, whether alone or in composition*, denotes :

1st. A relation of *union*, *separation*, *effect*, *cause*, or *dependance*, &c. or, in other words, is the sign of the Genitive and Ablative cases :—
L'amour de Dieu, (the love of God); être retranché de la société, (to be cut off from society); être estimé de tout le monde, (to be esteemed by every body.)

2. Secondly, *De* denotes the *quality* of a person or thing, the *sort*, *species*, and *matter* of which a thing is made, which is expressed by the first of the two Nouns, which are joined by *de* :—*Un homme d'honneur*; *un plat d'argent*; *un pont de pierre*.

3. Thirdly, *De*, either preceding or blended with the Article, denotes the *limited sense* of Nouns :—*De l'argent*, (some money); *du pain*, (some bread); *j'a affaire à des gens fort honnêtes*, (I have to do with very honest people.)

* Chambaud, by *composition*, here, signifies the union of *de* with the Article, in *du* for *de le*, and *des* for *de les*.

4. Fourthly,

4. Fourthly, *De* denotes the place from which one comes, and the term from which one begins to act:—Sortir de Londres, to go out of London; revenir de France, to return from France; tomber de haut, to fall from a high situation; mesurer d'un bout à l'autre, to measure from one end to another.

5. Fifthly, *De* denotes the manner of acting or being, the means or cause:—Faire de son mieux, to do [according to] one's best; danser de bonne grace, (to dance with a good grace, genteely); couper de bias, (to cut slopingly, with a slope or bias); s'y prendre de la bonne façon, (to go to work (after) the right way); mourir de froid, (to die with cold); vivre de fruits et de légumes, to live upon (i. e. by means of) fruit and pulse; sauter de joie, (to leap with or for joy); il se conduit de cette manière, he behaves in or after that manner; vivre d'une belle vie, (J. B. ROUSSEAU) (to live [by] a glorious life); mourir de mort naturelle, (to die [by] a natural death.)

6. Sixthly, *De* is used before the Noun of the thing made use of, and the instrument upon which one plays:—Se servir d'une épée, (to make use of a sword); jouer de la flûte, (to play on the flute, i. e. with it,) &c. &c.

7. Seventhly, *De* is used after many Verb attended by a Noun:—Se moquer de quelqu'un: jouir d'une chose; se repentir de sa faute; melez-vous de vos affaires.

8. Eighthly, *De* before a Noun of time signifies the time when, and sometimes the duration of the time specified:—*Il partit de nuit*, (he set out by night); *de jour*, (by day); *du matin*, (in the morning); *de grand matin*, (very early in the morning); *elle partoit d'hier*, SEVIGNE, (she set out from or since) yesterday); *du jour qu'elle y sera*, il faut dire adieu à tous ses charmes, (Ib.) (from the day she goes there, &c.); *vous partez d'aujourd'hui en huit jours*, SEVIGNE, (you set out this day week, literally, in a week from to-day); *je ne l'ai point vu d'aujourd'hui*, (I have not seen her [for] to-day); *je ne le verrai de ma vie*, (I will not see him for my life, as long as I live.)

9. Ninthly, *De* is used before Nouns denoting dimension, and after Nouns preceded by a Numeral, and followed by a Participle:—*Il croît tous les jours d'un poûce*, he grows every day [by] an inch; *il y a trente vaisseaux d'achevés*.

10. Tenthly, *De* is used after Pronouns Indeterminate, Adverbs of Quantity, and these words, *point*, *jamais*, *rien*, *quelque chose*, and *que* of admiration or exclamation, followed by a Substantive or Adjective:—*Personne de blessé*; *ye n'avoit-il quelqu'un d'ivre?* *assez de provisions*; *plus d'effets et moins de paroles*; *point de sens commun*; *quelque chose de bon*; *que de plaisir et de peine à la fois!*

11. Eleventhly, *De* is used before an Infinitive after Adjectives signifying fullness, emptiness, plenty, or want; likewise after certain Verbs,

Verbs, and almost all Nouns, so they do not signify inclination, reluctance, aptness, fitness, or unfitness: — *Indigne de vivre*; il est capable de faire cela; je m'abstiendrai d'y aller; il n'a détourné de faire cela; le desir d'apprendre; il a le bonheur de plaisir.

12. Twelfthly, *De, des*, an inseparable Preposition gives the words composed of it a contrary signification to that which they have when simple: — *Défaire*, (to undo); *désavantage*, (disadvantage.)

13. Thirteenthly, *De par* is a form of speaking, expressing from, in the name of: — *De par le Roi*, (in the king's name.)

N O T E.

Idiomatical Uses of *de*.

Si j'étois *de vous*; si j'étois *que de vous*; if I was *in your place*: J'y travaillerai *de mon côté*; I will exert myself about it *on my part*: Il me fait l'honneur de me mettre *de toutes ses parties de plaisir*; he does me the honour to take me *upon all his parties of pleasure*: Je suis *de toutes ses parties*; personne n'y est souverain *de droit*, mais seulement *de fait*; MONTESQUIEU; no one is sovereign there *de jure*, &c. i. e. *possession* and not *right* confers the crown there: Ciceron ne nous dit point quelle étoit cette somme, mais Dion dit qu'elle étoit *de cent mille sesterces*; Ib.; that it was a hundred thousand sesterces (*une somme de 100,000 sest.*): Il est *de toutes les fêtes*; he is *at all public entertainments*: Fourberies qui sont assez *de tous les tems, et de tous les lieux*; tricks to be met with *at all times, and in all places*: Elle seule est *du secret*; she alone is *in the secret*: Etre *de moitié*; to go halves, to be *for half*: Le travail les épousant *de force*, exhausting them *in point of strength* (*natura, secundum*): Changer *d'habits*; to change one's cloaths, *to change in cloaths*: Passer *de mode*; to go

go out of fashion: Désobéir son prince *d'effet ou de parole*, (SULLY); *in word or deed*: Ce sont eux qui l'avilissent *de cœur*, (ROUSSEAU); which debases him *in heart*: *De ce qu'un homme est plus adroit, ou plus fort qu'un autre, il ne s'ensuit pas qu'il ait de meilleures raisons; because that, &c.* literally, *from this, that, &c.*: Son habit est comme *de cire*; his coat sets on him *like wax*, (i. e. comme [un habit] *de cire*): *De grace, n'en faites rien; pray, for pity's sake, I beg as a favour you would not do it*: Vous êtes fort *de son gout*; you are quite *to her taste*: Il vient *de sortir*; he is *just gone*; literally, *he comes from going out*: *Comme si de rien n'étoit*, (SEVIGNE); as if nothing was the matter: *De vous dire comment cela est arrivé c'est ce que je ne fais pas*; (i. e. ce que je ne fais pas dire, c'est *de vous dire comment cela est arrivé*): Les magistrats doivent rendre la justice *de citoyen à citoyen*, chaque peuple la doit rendre lui même *de lui à un autre*; magistrates ought to do justice *between citizen and citizen*, i. e. *from citizen to citizen*, &c.: Ces étrangers ne demandoient d'abord les productions du pays que *de gré à gré*, (RAYNAL); did not at first require the productions of the country, but *on terms agreeable to both parties, from will to will*: La reine avoit fait *de Mazarin le maître absolu de la France et le sien*, (VOLTAIRE); the queen had made [of] Mazarin the absolute master of, &c.: Décider de quelque chose; to decide upon any thing: Discerner le bien *d'avec le mal*; to discern good from evil. (The force of the two Prepositions (*de* and *avec*) is this; *avec* implies that the good and evil in question are previously brought together, for the purpose of comparison; and the *de* shews that after such comparison a discrimination is made.) Connus *de nos jours*; known *in our days*: Dépendre *d'autrui*; to depend *of* or *on* another: Qu'est ce que *de nous*! what wretched creatures we are! literally, what is it, namely, *of* or *with* us! "Que sera-ce donc *d'un acte aussi compliqué que la navigation!*" (Oeuvres de M. THOMAS); what will then be the case *of* or *with* an act so complicated as navigation! i. e. how complicated an operation must then navigation be! Tout *d'un coup* je vis sortir du couchant un nuage noir et poétique où le soleil s'alla plonger, et en même temps un brouillard épais & moi * *de courir*, (SEVIGNE); and I fell to

* This phrase I cannot account for.

running:

running: Il est de bonne compagnie; Ib.: he is very good company: On porta le deuil de Cromwell à la cour de France, (VOLTAIRE); wore mourning for, etc. etc.

Avant.

Avant denotes priority of time, as also of order and rank, and is the contrary to *après*; it signifies in English *before*:—*J'ai vu cela avant vous*; il faut mettre ce mot-ci *avant* l'autre; il arriva *avant* moi.

☞ *Avant* is also an *Adverb of place and time*, commonly used with these adverbial Particles, *si*, *bien*, *trop*, *plus*, *assez*, *fort*, and is englished by *far*, *deep*:—*N'allez pas si avant*; don't go so far: Creuser fort *avant* dans la terre; to dig very *deep* into the ground: *Plus avant*; *further*, *deeper*: L'épée lui est entrée *bien avant* dans le corps; *bien avant* dans la nuit; *very late* at night; Vous poussez les choses *trop avant*; la chose alla *si avant que*; jamais philosophe ne pénétra *plus avant* dans la connoissance de la nature; nous étions *bien avant en mer*; gravez cela *bien avant* dans votre mémoire; il étoit *bien avant* dans les bonnes graces du roi, (SULLY.) In these latter phrases we see *avant* used figuratively.

N O T E.

Avant que is a Conjunction governing the Subjunctive:—*Avant qu'il soit un an*; before a year be gone.

Avant que de is another Conjunction governing the Infinitive:—Parlez lui *avant que de le faire*; speak to him before you do it.

Avant sometimes assumes the character of a Substantive, governed

governed by the Preposition *en*, and signifying place and time, with the idea of priority or advancement:—*Aller en avant*; *de ce jour là en avant*; *mettre en avant*; (to advance, assert a thing): *Vous mettez en avant un principe fort dangereux.*

Après.

Après denotes posteriority both of time, place, and order, and is used in opposition to *avant*, with respect to time; and to *devant*, with respect to place and order:—*Après le déluge*; after the deluge: *Sa maison est après la vôtre*; his house is after or next to yours: *Il marchoit après moi*; he walked after me.

Après is construed with the Infinitive:—*Il mourut après avoir diné*; (after having dined): *Après diner* [or, *après le diner*, making the Infinitive a Noun] *après boire*.

N O T E.

Idiomatical Uses of *après*.

Nous n'avons rien de plus cher après l'honneur; next to our honour, nothing can be dearer to us: *C'est la plus laide bête après le loup*; [said of a very ugly person] he or she is enough to frighten a horse; literally, is the ugliest beast next to the wolf: *Crier après quelqu'un*; to scold at one: *Tout le monde crie après lui*; every body complains of him: *Il est toujours après moi*; he is always hanging about me, dangling after me: *Etre après quelque chose*; to be about any thing: *Je suis après votre montre*; I am about your watch: *On est après*; it is doing: *Je vais me mettre après*; I will set about it presently: *Il y a voit long tems qu'il courroit après cet emploi*, qu'il éroit après ce bénéfice, il l'a enfin obtenu; he has been a long time about that place: *Soupirer après quelque chose*; to sigh after a thing: *Se mettre après quelqu'un*; to fall upon one: *On a long tems attendu après lui*; we have waited for him a long

a long time : On n'attend plus qu'après cela pour partir ; [that is the only thing which prevents our going away ; literally, we wait only for after that [for that to take place] in order to set out : N'attendre pas après une chose ; to be in a condition to live, and do, without a thing : C'est un homme risqué et qui n'attend pas après cela ; après cela, après lui, il faut tirer l'échelle ; that or he is never to be outdone, [literally, no one can mount higher, and therefore the ladder, after he has ascended, may as well be drawn up.] Après quoi is an expression very commonly used as a Continuator in narrations, and signifies afterwards : — On signa la capitulation, après quoi la place se rendit. Après tout is also frequently employed in the conclusion of long sentences, at the beginning of the last member, in order to sum up the argument : — Après tout il faut conclure que cette chose, là demande beaucoup de soins et d'attention. Ci-après is a compound word, used for après-ci, to signify in the sequel : — Comme on verra ci-après.

D'après is a compound Preposition, signifying from by, after, according to : — Ce portrait est fait d'après nature ; un tableau d'après Raphaël.

Après is used as an Adverb of time, if it is not rather that it is a Preposition, whose regimen is understood : — Commencez par déjeuner, & vous étudierez après [cela].

Après que is a Conjunction governing the Indicative : — Après que vous aurez fait ; après que les troupes furent parties.

Devant.

Devant is used in opposition to après and derrière, and is frequently construed with de, au, and par : — Mettez cela devant le feu ; put that before the fire : Il demeure tout devant l'église ; he lives just over against the church : Otez cela de devant moi, or, de devant mon jour ; get out of my sight, out of my light, [i. e. from before me, from before my light] : Ils passent par devant chez nous ; they pass before our door, [literally, by before, &c.] : Un acte par devant

vant notaire; a deed drawn by a notary or lawyer.

NOTE.

Ci-devant is used for *devant-ci*, as *ci-après* for *après-ci*:—*Comme nous avons dit ci-devant*; as we said before: *Envoyer au devant de quelqu'un*; to send, go, come, to meet one: *Aller au devant d'une chose*; to obviate, prevent a thing: *Aller au devant des desirs de quelqu'un*; to anticipate them: (In all which phrases it may be doubted whether *devant* be not a Noun in the Dative, with a Genitive following.)

Devant is also used adverbially in some phrases:—*Sens devant derrière*, (i. e. le sens [qui est] devant [mis] derrière); preposterously, the wrong side, in a wrong situation; literally, the side before, behind: *Il met sa chemise sens devant derrière*: *Passez devant*; go before: *Si vous êtes pressé, courez devant*, (Prov.); if you are in a hurry, set off, or forward, you may set off whenever you please: *Les premiers vont devant*, (Prov.); the most diligent get the start of others: *Il est blessé par devant*; he is wounded in the fore-part of the others: *Le chapitre de devant*; the chapter before: *Le train de devant d'une carosse*; the fore-wheels of a coach: *Les jambes de devant d'un cheval*; the fore-legs of a horse.

Devant is also a Noun, signifying the fore-part of a thing:—*Un devant de chemise*; the fore-flap of a shirt: *Un devant d'estomac*; a stomach: *Le devant d'une perruque*; the fore-top of a periwig: *Le devant d'une cuirasse*; the breast-plate of a suit of body-armour: *Un devant d'autel*; the antependium of an altar: *Prendre le devant*; gagner le devant, or *les devans*; to have to get the start of one: *La cavalerie tenoit les devans*; the cavalry marched first: *Prendre le devant*, or *les devans*; (in a figurative sense) to prevent, to be beforehand with one: *Bâir sur le devant*, (Prov.); to grow burly, or bulky, get a big belly.

Devant, as we have said before, is used in opposition to *après*:—*Il marchoit devant moi*; he was walking before me: *Avoir le pas devant*

devant quelqu'un; to have the *precedency* of one.

Devant signifies also *in the presence of*:—*Prêcher devant le roi*: *Quand il fut devant ses juges*: *Son ame est devant Dieu*; his soul is before God, i. e. he is dead.

Derrière.

Derrière denotes place, and is the opposite of *devant*:—*Regardez derrière vous*; look behind you.

NOTE.

Derrière is also used adverbially, and frequently construed with *de* and *par*:—*Qu'importe que cela soit devant ou derrière?* *Par derrière*; behind: *Porte de derrière*, a back-door, and, figuratively, a shift, an evasion: *Mettre une chose sens devant derrière*: *Les jambes de derrière d'un cheval*: *Faire rages des pieds de derrière*, Prov. (to work with might and main.)

Derrière is also said of the *posterior* part of a thing or person:—*Etre logé sur le derrière*; to lodge *backwards*: *Il montre son derrière*; he shews his *binder-parts*: *Montrer le derrière*, (Prov.) to fail in one's promise.

Chez.

Chez denotes *at*, or *to the house of any one*; it is construed with *de* and *par*, and the compound *par-devant*:—*Il est chez moi*; he is *at my house*: *Je vais chez moi*; I am going *home*: *Je viens de chez Madame le Blanc*; I am come from Mrs. White's: *J'ai passé par chez lui*; I have called *at his house*: *J'ai passé par devant chez lui*; I have passed *by his house*: *Chacun est maître chez soi*; every body is master *at home*: *Avoir un chez*

chez soi; to have an house of one's own; (where *chez soi* is used substantively.)

Chez signifies also *among*, *with*:—

Il y avoit une coutume *chez les Romains*; there was a custom *amongst the Romans*.

Contre.

Contre denotes *opposition*, *displeasure*, &c.:—
Aller contre vent et marée; to sail *against* wind and tide: *Se fâcher contre quelqu'un*; to be angry *with* one: *Sé battre contre quelqu'un*; to fight *with* any one.

Contre denotes also *proximity of situation*:—
J'étois assis *contre lui*; I sat *by* him: La maison est *contre la mienne*; his house is *by mine*: *Contre le bois*; *near the wood*.

N O T E.

Quand on fit cette proposition, tout le monde s'eleva *contre*; when the proposition was made, every body expressed their dislike to it. Pour moi, je suis *contre*; for my part, I am *against* it. Je ne suis ni *pour*, ni *contre*; I am neither for, nor *against* it.

Contre is made a Noun of, and signifies *opposition*:—On parle diversement de cette affaire, il faut savoir *le pour* et *le contre*; one must know what is said *pro* and *con*: we must hear *both sides of the question*. La chose n'est pas sans difficulté; il y a *du pour* et *du contre*: much may be said on both sides.

Dans and En.

Dans denotes a *relation of time and place*, and implies *in*, *within*:—*Être dans la bôete*, *dans la maison*, *dans la ville*, *dans la même année*: *Dans un mois*, (*within a month*.)

(With

(With Verbs of Motion it signifies *into* :—
Quand il entra dans la chambre; when he went
into the chamber.)

Dans denotes the *motive* and *view of one's actions* :—*Il fait sa cour, dans le dessein de s'avancer*; *with a design to be preferred.*

Dans signifies also *according to* :—*Cela est vrai dans les principes d'Aristote*; that is true *according to the principles of Aristotle.*

Where *in* occurs in English before the names of *towns* and *authors*, *dans* is used, and not *en* :—*Il est dans Londres*; he is *in London*: *Nous lisons dans Cicéron*: *J'ai vu cela dans Ovide.*

NOTE.

I cannot help suggesting here a very peculiar use of *dans*, in sentences like this ;—*He drinks out of the cup*; *he took it out of an author*; *he took her out of the convent*; where *out of* must be rendered by *dans* :—*Il boit dans le vase*; *il le puisoit dans un auteur*; *il la prit dans le couvent*. The truth is; the English mark the action of separation and removal of the thing from its former situation; and the French, that situation itself :—*Il boit [la liqueur qui est] dans la vase*: *Il puise cette expression [qui est] dans tel ou tel auteur*: *Il la prit [elle qui étoit] dans le couvent*.

En denotes *place*, and *things considered as relating to place*, and very rarely admits of the Article before its regimen, except when it suffers an elision :—*Etre en Angleterre*: *Vivre en sa maison*.

En marks the *country* whither one is going :—*Aller en France*: *Venir ou passer en Italie*.

En denotes *time*, and *things considered as relating to time* :—*En tout tems* (*at all times*); *en plein jour*; *en hiver*: *Tant en paix qu'en guerre*.

NOTE.

NOTE.

But in a sentence like the following, where a comparison is made between two portions of time, *dans*, and not *en*, is used:—*Une année dans l'autre*, (RAYNAL;) one year with another.

En before a Noun of time denotes the space of time which slides away in doing any thing; and *dans*, the space of time after which some thing is to be done:—*Le Roi va à Hanover en trois jours*; the King goes to Hanover in three days; i. e. he is no longer than three days in going: *Le Roi va à Hanover dans trois jours*; the King goes to Hanover three days hence; after three days are gone, he will set out.

En denotes the state and disposition of persons and things:—*Être en vie*; to be alive: *Être en bonne santé*; to be in good health: *Un enfant en nourrice*; a child at nurse: *Une femme en couche*; a woman lying in: *Être en bonheur*; to have good luck, to be lucky: *Être en dévotion*, *en oraisons*, *en prières*; to be at one's devotions or prayers.

En denotes the dress one is in, and the manner of being or acting:—*Être en robe de chambre*, *en bonnet de nuit*, et *en pantoufles*; to be in one's night-gown, &c. *Vivre en roi*; to live like a king: *Se conduire en étourdi*; to live like a blunderbuss.

En implies (but less definitely than *dans*) the motive and end of action:—*Il fit cela en haine de ce que*, &c.; he did that through hatred, &c. *En considération de ses services*: *En dépit de lui*.

En denotes the passage from one place to another,

other, the progress of things, and the change of condition with respect to persons and things :—Courir de rue en rue ; to run from street to street : Narcisse fut métamorphosé en fleur ; —was changed into a flower : L'affaire va de mal en pis ; the affair grows worse and worse, i. e. goes from bad to worse : De bien en mieux ; better and better.

¶ *Dans and en must be repeated before each Noun governed :—Il étoit en robe de chambre, en bonnet de nuit, et en pantoufles : On ne voit que des brochures dans sa salle, dans sa chambre, et dans son cabinet.*

NOTE.

Though it is sometimes indifferent to use either of these two Prepositions, yet that of the two, which is used before the first, must continue the same before each Noun, when the same narration or discourse is continued in one unbroken thread :—*La gloire d'un souverain consiste bien moins en la grandeur de ses états, en la force de ses citadelles, et en la magnificence de ses palais, qu'en la multitude des peuples, sur lesquels il regne : Il est fidèle dans ses promesses, inépuisable dans ses bienfaits, juste dans ses jugemens.*

But if the same thread of discourse is not kept up, and the same sense does not run through the sentence, both Prepositions may be used, for the sake of variety :—*Il passa un jour & une nuit entière en une si profonde méditation, qu'il se tint toujours dans une même posture.*

¶ And here, as Chambaud has, by no means, sufficiently discriminated between the use and application of *dans* and *en*, I must beg leave to introduce a passage from Girard's *Synonimes*, which is quite satisfactory on the subject.—“ *Lorsqu'il s'agit du lieu, dans a un sens précis et défini, qui fait comprendre qu'une chose contient ou enferme une autre, et marque un rapport du dedans au dehors : —On est dans la chambre, dans la maison, dans la ville, dans le royaume, quand on n'est pas sorti. En a un sens vague*

vague et indéfini, qui indique seulement en général où l'on est, & marque un rapport du lieu où l'on se trouve à un autre où l'on pourroit être :—On est *en ville*, lorsqu'en n'est pas à *sa maison ou campagne*; ou *en province*, quand on a quitté Paris : On met *en prison*, & l'on met *dans* les cachots. Lorsqu'il est question du temps ; *dans* marque plus particulièrement celui où l'on exécute les choses ; & *en* marque plus proprement celui qu'on emploie à les exécuter :—La mort arrive *dans* le moment qu'on y pense le moins ; & l'on passe *en* un instant de ce monde à l'autre.

"Lorsque ces mots sont employés pour indiquer l'état ou la qualification, *dans* est ordinairement d'usage, pour le sens particularisé ; & *en* pour le sens général :—Ainsi on dit vivre *dans* une entière liberté, être *dans* une fureur extrême, tomber *dans* une profonde léthargie ; mais on dit — vivre *en* liberté, être *en* fureur, tomber *en* léthargie."

En, when it is construed with a Gerund, denotes either time or manner, and may be rendered by *when*, *whilst*, or *as*, with a Tense of the Indicative :—Parler *en tremblant* ; to speak trembling : Il laissa ordre *en partant* ; he left orders as he went away : Il l'aborda *en riant* ; he accosted her with a smile. *En passant* ; whilst, or when, he was passing by : C'est une chose dite *en passant*, (*Id obiter dictum est*;) said by the way.

N O T E.

IDIOMATIC USES of *dans* and *en*, either considered absolutely or relatively ; together with some cursory Observations concerning the proper Method of rendering the correspondent English Prepositions, *in* and *into*, in certain cases.

Être *en bute à tout le monde* ; to be exposed to the attacks of the world, to be *for a butt* (i. e. a mark to shoot at,) to, &c. *En avant*, forward :—Mettre *en avant*. *En dedans*, within :—Il est *en dedans*. Être *en train* ; to begin, to be at it, have one's hand in :—Quand il est *en train*, rien ne lui coûte : *En train de parler, de boire* ; in a drink-ing, talking humour. Mettre *en train* ; to set one on, set agoing :

agoing: *Se mettre en train de*—; *to begin to*—. *En tant que* is used conjunctively in the signification of *considered as*, literally, *in so much as* [being]:—*Jesu Christ en tant qu'homme*; *Jesu Christ considered as a man*. It is also a law-expression, signifying *as far as*, *as much as*:—*En tant que je puis*; *as far as lies in my power*; *En tant que besoin sera*; *as far as need will require*.

We say both *en été* and *dans l'été*, in summer; *en hiver* and *dans l'hiver*, in winter; *en automne* and *dans l'automne*, in autumn: but we do not say *en printemps*, but *dans le printemps*, or *au printemps*, for *in the spring*; because *printemps* is as it were *le premier temps*, before which *en* could not be used.

In and *into* cannot always be rendered by *dans* or *en*; in the following expressions *entre* corresponds to them:—To hold a child *in* one's arms; *tenir un enfant entre ses bras*: To deliver a thing *into* any one's hands; *remettre quelque chose entre les mains de quelqu'un*, (where we might say, *remettre en main*;) To get it again from his hands; *le retirer d'entre ses mains*. If we consider the force of *dans* and *en*, and of *entre*, with any degree of critical exactitude, we shall see the propriety of this distinction.

INSTANCES where there is an Ellipsis of *dans* and *en*.

In some cases *dans* and *en* are not expressed, although understood, and the Noun is used singly, or with an Article:—*Il se levoit à quatre heures, été & hiver*, (THOMAS) [for *en été, en hiver*:] *Les enfans chantent la nuit quand ils ont peur*, (ROUSSEAU) [for *dans la nuit, q. d. pendant la nuit*:] *Les ventes s'étoient élévées jusqu'à ce qui faisait, année commune, paix et guerre*, (RAYNAL) [for *dans l'année commune, en paix & en guerre*:] *On arrêta, la nuit suivante, les esclaves dans leurs loges*, (Id.) [for *dans la nuit suivante*:] *Nous partons demain matin pour être, Jeudi sept, à Paris*, (SEVIGNE) [for *Jeudi en sept jours*;] to be at Paris *Thursday week*.

Depuis.

Depuis denotes both *time*, *place*, and *order*, or *enumeration of things*, and is commonly followed

L

in

in the sentence by *jusqu'à*—: in such case *depuis* denotes the term *from which*; and *jusqu'à*, *to which*:—*Depuis ce temps-là*; *from that time*: Je ne l'ai pas vu *depuis son retour*; I have not seen him *since his return*: Je vous attendrai *depuis cinq jusqu'à six*; *from five to six*: Vous êtes venu *depuis lui*; she arrived *since he did*: *Depuis le commencement jusqu'à la fin*; *from the beginning to the end*: Il m'a suivi *depuis la bourse jusqu'au palais*: Je les ai tous vus *depuis le premier jusqu'au dernier*.

N O T E.

Observe the difference between *depuis* and *jusqu'à*, *de* and *à*, and *de* and *en*; all which Prepositions are respectively rendered by *from* and *to*. The comparison holds good only in speaking of *place*, to which subject therefore our observations are referable. When merely the distance between two places is described, *de* and *à* are used:—On compte vingt milles *de Windsor à Londres*; they reckon twenty miles *from London to Windsor*. But when the quality of the distance is involved in the observation; i. e. its being great or small; we use *depuis* and *jusqu'à*:—Il marcha *depuis Windsor jusqu'à Londres*; he walked [quinto] from Windsor to London.—*De* and *en*, with the same Non-repeated, denote succession of place:—Il va *de cabaret en cabaret*; he goes *from ale-house to ale-house*. They are used figuratively also:—Le royaume avoit descendu *jusqu'à lui de père en fils*; *in succession from father to son*.

IDIOMATICAL PHRASES formed by *depuis*.

Depuis peu; lately, not long since: *Depuis quand?* How long? how long since? since when? *Depuis deux ans*; these two years: *Depuis long temps*; this long time.

Jusque or *Jusques*.

Jusque denotes place and time to a degree which cannot be exceeded, or which, in the mind of the speaker,

speaker, is *very great*; and requires besides the Preposition *à*, if no other Preposition intervene, before a Noun and Verb. It is indifferent to spell it with or without an *s* at the end; but when it is construed with a Vowel, it loses its final *s*, and *e* is cut off:—Depuis Paris *jusqu'à* Londres: Depuis la St. Jean *jusqu'à* Noel: Il alla *jusqu'au* Grand Caire: Le vice regne *jusques* sur le trône: *Jusqu'à* présent: *Jusq'où?* *Jusqu'ici?*: *Jusques là?*: Ils en vinrent *jusques-là* qu'on crut qu'ils s'alloient battre: *Jusqu'à quand?* How long?

N O T E.

PHRASES wherein *jusqu'à* occurs.

Crier *jusqu'à* s'enrouer; to bawl one's self hoarse: Brûler du vin *jusqu'an déchét de deux tiers*; to burn away wine *two-thirds*, (literally, to the *losi*, *waste*, or *diminution* of two-thirds:) *Jusqu'au* revoir, (a phrase at parting;) till we meet again: Ami *jusqu'aux autels*; a friend as far as conscience permits: Brave *jusqu'au* dégainer, (said of a bully;) courageous till he comes to the point, till he is to draw.

Jusqu'à, *jusqu'aux*, occur, in certain elliptical sentences, expressive of *extremes* and *excess*:—Il aime *jusqu'à* ses ennemis, (he loves even to his enemies;) i. e. il aime [tous les hommes depuis ses amis] *jusqu'à* ses ennemis: *Jusqu'aux* plus abjects des hommes se donnoient la licence de—; i. e. tous les hommes *jusqu'aux* plus abjects des hommes, &c.

N O T E.

Jusqu'à and *Jusqu'aux* are sometimes used in this sense, with the force of the Dative Case, i. e. as the *end*, and not the *object* or *subject* of the Verb, (the sentence being still elliptical, with this difference however, that the sentence is defective in a *Dative*, not an *Accusative* or *Nominative Noun*)

Noun) but with such Verbs only as require nothing but the Dative Case after them, or have both a Dative and Accusative together: thus we say,—*Il vise jusqu'à la couronne*; (in the sense of, *il vise à la couronne même*) because *viser* governs the Dative only; and, *Il étendit sa liberalité jusqu'aux valets*, (in the sense of, *aux valets mêmes*) because *étendre* has both an Accusative and Dative after it: but we cannot say,—*Il donna jusqu'aux valets*, to express that he gives presents even to his servants; because it would rather, and really does imply, that he gave away every thing he had, and even his very servants; the sentence being elliptical for,—*Il donna [tout] jusqu'aux valets [à ceux qui lui demandoient des faveurs]*; or something like it.

As to the ellipsis occurring in such sentences as have *jusqu'à*, *jusqu'aux*, as prefixes of a Dative Case, they are to be supplied thus:—*Il vise [laux plus grandes choses] jusqu'à la couronne*: *Il étendit sa liberalité [à tous les hommes] jusqu'aux valets*.

Jusque serves to form a compound Conjunction (*jusqu'à ce que*) governing the Subjunctive:—*Jusqu'à ce qu'il vienne*.

Hors, hormis, excepté, à la réserve.

Hors denotes exclusion and exception: when it comes before a Noun of time and place, it requires the Preposition *de* before the Noun; also before an Infinitive; and, joined with *que*, it forms a compound Conjunction, governing the Indicative:—*Vous les verrez quand ils seront hors de table*; when they are risen from table: *Hors du royaume*; out of the kingdom: *Hors de saison*, *hors d'œuvres*; kick-shaws, dainty dishes; an outwork in fortification: *Il ne pouvoit faire pis hors de se pendre*; he could not do worse except hanging himself: *Il lui a fait toutes sortes de mauvais traitemens hors qu'il ne l'a pas battu*.

he has used him as ill as he could, *except that* he has not beaten him: *Hors cela, nous sommes d'accord; excepting in that point, we agree.*

Hormis and *excepté* denote also *exclusion* and *exception*, but they govern the Noun immediately, without *de*, although they require it before the Infinitive; they also govern the Indicative with *que*:—*Ils sortirent tous, hormis or excepté deux ou trois;* they all went out, *but or except* two or three: *Il lui permet tout, excepté d'aller aux assemblées;* *Je me porte assez bien, excepté que mon bras est toujours enflé;* *or, hormis or excepté mon bras qui,* &c.

À la réserve is used in the same sense, but is attended with *de* before the next Noun as well as the Infinitive:—*Il a donné tout son bien à ses enfans, à la réserve de ses rentes viagères;* *Il a tout pouvoir à la réserve de conclure.*

Loin.

Loin implies *distance*, and requires the Preposition *de* before the next Noun or Infinitive; or *que* before the Subjunctive, which it governs:—*Loin du chemin, de la rue, de chez moi;* far from the road, from the street, from home: *Loin d'ici:* *Loin de secourir ses alliés,* il se déclare contre eux: *Loin qu'il soit disposé à vous faire satisfaction,* il est homme à vous quereller: *Bien loin que cela soit ainsi.*

Malgré, en dépit.

Malgré and *en dépit* imply *resistance* and *opposition*, and govern, *malgré* the Noun without *de*,

and *en dépit* with it; they also form with *que* a Conjunction governing the Subjunctive:—*Il l'a fait malgré moi*; he did it *in spite of me*: *En dépit de lui, et de tout le monde*; *in spite of him, and—, &c.*: *Il le fera malgré qu'il en ait*; or, *en dépit qu'il en ait*; he shall do it *in spite of his teeth*: *Malgré, bon gré, je l'aurai*; *will be, will be*, I shall get it.

Par.

1st. *Par* denotes the *cause, motive, means, instrument, and manner*, answering very aptly to the Latin *per*, from which it is derived:—*Par ordre du roi*; *by the king's order*: *Je lui ai fait dire par un tel*: *Il l'a obtenu par mon moyen*: *Vous n'en parlez que par envie*; you speak of it only *out of, from a motive of, envy*: *Je l'ai fait par cette raison*; I did it *for that reason*: *Il entra par la porte, mais il sortit par la fenêtre*; he came in *at the door, but went out at the window*; i. e. *by means of* the door and window: *Je le lui ferai tenir par la première occasion*; I will send it to him by the first opportunity: *Je compris par là*; I understood *thereby*.

2dly. *Par* denotes *place*, and is construed with several Prepositions and Adverbs of place:—*Cela se fait par tout pays*; that is done *in all countries*: *Par tout le royaume*; all *over the kingdom*: *Par tout où*; *wheresoever*: *Par où?* Which way? *Par ici*; this way: *Par là*; that way: *Par deça*; this side, on this side: *Par delà*; on that side, on the other side: *Par dedans*; within: *Par dehors*; without: *Par après*; by:

by: *Par devès*; by, in his possession: [Il a les papiers *par devès* lui; he has the papers by him, *in his possession*:] *Par dessus*; upon, over, above, over and above: *Par dessous*: *Par derrière*: *Par à côté*: *Par le haut*: *Par le bas*: *Par en bas*; downwards: *Par le haut par en bas*: *Par haut et par bas*; upwards and downwards: (*Par le passé*; formerly, in times past: [q. d. *par le [tems] passé*:]) *Par-ci par là*; here and there, now and then, at several times: *Par ainsi*; therefore.)

3dly. *Par* denotes motion and passing through: —Il a passé *par* Paris; he went through Paris: Se promener *par* les rues; to walk about the streets: Jetter *par* la fenêtre; to throw out of the window. So in a figurative sense, which is referable to this division of the use of *par*, we say,—Passer *par* l'examen; to submit to, go through the examination: Il en faut passer *par là*: Il faut passer *par là*, ou *par* la fenêtre, (Prov.) these things must be submitted to, or worse.

4thly. *Par* is construed with the Infinitive after Verbs signifying beginning or ending:—Il commença *par* se plaindre, et finit *par* demander de l'argent; he began with complaining, &c.: Elle conclut *par* le supplier de—, &c.

5thly. *Par* sometimes precedes Nouns denoting the accidents of the weather:—Où allez-vous *par* cette pluie-là? Where are you going in all this rain? Nous partimes *par* un beau tems; we set out in fair weather.

6thly. *Par*, construed with Nouns without the Article, denotes distribution and division:—Distribuer *par* chapitres; to divide into chapters:

Aller par bandes; to go in companies: *Donner tant par tête*; to give so much per head, for each, &c.: *Cent pièces par an*; an hundred pounds per annum, yearly: *Une guinée par soldat*; a guinea to each soldier.

Pour.

1st. *Pour* denotes the end or final cause, motive, and reason of action, and the use for which a thing is designed:—*Cela est pour vous*, et ceci est pour moi; that is for you, &c: *J'ai tant eu pour ma part*: *Pour l'amour de vous*: *Il fera cela pour vous*; he will do that upon your account, for your sake.

2dly. *Pour* denotes the suitableness or unsuitableness of a thing to some other thing with which it is compared:—*Cet enfant est bien avancé pour son age*, or *pour le peu de tems qu'il a apris*; that child is very forward for or considering his age, or the little time he has been learning. A comparison is made between the age of the boy, or the time of his learning, and his improvements, which are found to be more than suitable to those circumstances, to exceed them.

3dly. *Pour* is construed with the Infinitive (and not *de* or *à*) after *trop*, *assez*, *suffisant*, and *suffire*; and whenever we express the design, cause, and reason of doing any thing:—*Il est trop sensé pour faire cela*: *Le mérite ne suffit pas pour réussir*: *Il a fait pour me faire de la peine*: *Il a été pendu pour avoir volé sur le grand chemin*.

4thly. *Pour* before an Infinitive, followed by *moins* and a Negative in the latter part of the sentence,

tence, or by *ne laisser pas de*, or *ne laisser pas que de*, is very well rendered by *although*; and *moins* with the Negative, or *ne laisser pas de*, *ne laisser pas que de*, signifies, and may be rendered by, *nevertheless* or *yet*:—*Pour avoir de la religion, elle n'en est pas moins femme*; *although she is religious, yet she is still a woman*: *Pour n'avoir point de bien, elle ne laisse pas d'être extrêmement fière*; *although she has no fortune, she is nevertheless, for all that, very proud*.

5thly. *Pour*, between two Nouns without the Article, or between two Infinitives, without any other Preposition attending them, denotes *two alternatives offered*, of which one must be chosen; and which, though similar in their nature, are yet different in their circumstances:—*Chambre pour chambre, j'aime mieux celle-ci que l'autre*; *since I must have one of these two chambers, I like this better than the other*: *Mourir pour mourir, il vaut mieux mourir en combattant qu'en fuyant*; *since a man must die one way or the other, [i. e. either fighting or running away] it is better to die fighting than running away*.

6thly. *Pour* followed by *que* forms a Conjunction governing the Subjunctive, and used after *assez* and *trop*:—*Je ne suis pas assez heureux pour que cela m'arrive, &c.*

N O T E.

Pour peu que is another Conjunction governing the Subjunctive:—*Pour peu que vous en preniez soin*; *if you take never so little care of it*: *Pour peu qu'ils soient jolis*; *if they are at all pretty*.

The following are Phrases wherein *pour* occurs:—*Pour toujours, pour jamais*; *for ever*: *Pour le moins*; *at the least*: *Pour lors*; *then, at that time*: *Pour cet effet*; *therefore*,

fore, and therefore: Je compte son témoignage pour dix autres; I reckon his testimony *as good as* ten others: Je le tiens pour mon ami; I consider him *as my friend*: Je n'en dis pas d'avantage, et pour cause; I say no more, and good reason *why*, *for reasons*: Ne laissons pas, pour cela, de nous divertir; let us nevertheless, *for all that*, divert ourselves: Pour ainsi dire; *as one may say*, if we may be allowed to use *the expression*: Il a beaucoup désprit, mais pour du jugement, il n'en a point; but *as for judgment* he has none: Pour moi, je crois que—; *as for me*, *for my part*, I believe that—: Pour ce qui est de moi; id.

G Observe that *for*, in English, before a Noun of time, is not rendered by *pour*, but by *pendant* before, or *durant* after the French Noun of time:—He has drank the water *for six weeks*; il a pris les eaux *pendant trois semaines*, or, *six semaines durant*.

Près.

1. *Près* denotes *proximity of place*, and is always attended by *de*, except in some few cases of common discourse:—S'asseoir près de quelqu'un; to sit *by* or *near* one: Il demeure près du palais: Il demeure ici-près, for *près d'ici*.—*Près* is usually construed with *srop*, *si*, *assez*, *plus*, *bien*, when the idea of comparison or intention is joined to it.

(N. B. They never are construed with *au près*.)

2. *Près* denotes also *proximity of time*, and in such sense is construed with the Infinitive:—Il est bien près de midi; it is *very near* twelve: Cela n'est pas près d'être fait; that is not *near* being done: Elle est près d'accoucher; she is *near* her time: Il a été près de trois heures à dîner; he has been *almost*, *near*, three hours at dinner: Son armée est de près de cinquante mille hommes; his army is *almost* fifty thousand strong.

Près

Près is also used in the sense of *save*, *excepting*; but it always comes after its regimen; which is besides preceded by the Preposition *à*, and *de* is omitted after *près*:—*C'est un galant homme à son humeur près*; he is a clever man, *save* in his temper: *J'ai été payé à cent louis près*; I have been paid *all*, *to* an hundred louis d'or, or *excepting* that sum: *À cent louis près*, nous sommes d'accord; there is but the difference of that sum between us: *À cela près*, *à telle chose près*, *save* that, that being excepted: *Ne laissez pas de conclure votre marché, à cela près*; *as far as that, save that*: *À Latin près*, je devins un garçon universel; *put Latin out of the question*, &c. (*Gil Blas*.) *Il n'est pas à cent guinées près*: *Il n'en est pas à cela près*; he can afford to lose, give, or throw away an hundred guineas, that amount, as much as that; (i. e. he is so rich, that upon occasion of spending money, he has no need to say,—*Je puis dépenser de l'argent, à cent guinées près*; *within* an hundred guineas, &c.) *À peu près*; *pretty near*, *nearly*, *within a trifle*, *save a little*: *Il reconnoît une divinité, mais à peu près de la trempe des Dieux d'Epicure*.

NOTE.

Près, *de près*, are Adverbs signifying *near*, *hard by*, *close*:—*Plus près*; *nearer*: *Près à près*; *close, close together*, *quite near each other*: *Plus près à près*; *still closer one to another*: *Voir l'ennemi de près*; *to see the enemy near at hand*, (literally, from an adjacent situation occupied by the spectator:) *Le véritable amitié n'y regarde pas de si près*; *real friendship is not so strict*: *Il regarde de trop près aux choses*; *he looks too narrowly into things*: *Si l'on examine de près leur religion*; *if we examine narrowly into their religion*: *Suivre de près*; *to follow close*: *Observer de près*; *to observe*

Serre et ainsi dire : Toucher un homme de près : Le presser de près ; le prendre de près ; to press him hard : Cela me touche de près ; I am nearly concerned in it ; Il me touche de près ; he is my near relation : Il n'en veut entendre ni de près ni de loin, ni près ni loint ; he will not hear of it at all, upon any terms.

Auprès.

1. *Auprès denotes also proximity of place, and is construed with de :—Se maison est auprès de la miènne ; his house is next to mine.*

2. *Auprès implies a relation of domestic, servile, or at least dependant attachment :—être auprès d'un seigneur ; to be about a nobleman's person : L'ambassadeur de sa Majesté Britannique auprès du Roi très Chrétien ; the ambassador of his Britannic Majesty to the most Christian King : Il me demanda pour être auprès de son fils unique qui avoit à peu près mon age ; he asked me as a companion [of a subordinate condition] for his only son, &c.*

N O T E

Etre bien auprès de quelqu'un ; to be well with any one, to be in favour with him : N'être pas bien auprès de quelqu'un ; to be in disgrace with any one : Pouvoir beaucoup auprès de quelqu'un : Avoir du pouvoir auprès de quelqu'un ; to have some influence over, or with any one : Elle peut tout auprès de lui ; she can do any thing with him.

3. *Auprès denotes besides a relation of comparison :—La terre n'est rien auprès du reste de l'univers ; the earth is nothing in comparison of the rest of the universe.*

NOTE.

N O T E.

Auprès is also an Adverb of place, of the same signification as the Preposition:—*Je ne puis voir cela, si je ne suis auprès*, or *tout auprès*; if I am not near it, close by it: *Par auprès*; *by, near, a little on the side* [of any place]: *Il n'est pas besoin d'entrer dans la ville, il ne faut que passer par auprès.*

Proche.

Proche denotes also proximity of place, and is generally accompanied by *de*:—*Proche de la ville*; *near the city*: *Il demeure ici-proche*, [for *proche d'ici*]; *he lives hard by*.

Vis-à-vis, à l'opposite.

Vis-à-vis, and *à l'opposite*, two compound Prepositions, are both attended by *de*, for the most part, and signify over-against. *Vis-à-vis* is said both of persons and things; *à l'opposite* is said of things and places, but not of persons:—*Je me plaçai vis-à-vis de lui*: *Il est vis-à-vis*; he is over the way, (where the regimen of *vis-à-vis* [*d'ici*, or something of that kind] is understood): *À l'opposite de sa maison, est une colline.*

N O T E.

The Preposition *de* is sometimes left out, in common conversation, after *près*, *proche*, and *vis-à-vis*:—*Près l'église St. Paul*: *Proche le pont de Londres*, &c.

À côté [de].

À côté [de] serves also to form another compound Preposition, implying proximity of place:—*S'asseoir à côté de quelqu'un*; to sit by one: *Passer*

Servir à quelqu'un ; Venir un homme de près : Le presser de près, le prendre de près ; to press him hard : Cela me touche de près ; I am nearly concerned in it ; Il me touche de près ; he is my near relation : Il n'en veut entendre ni de près ni de loin, ni près ni loin ; he will not hear of it at all, upon any terms.

Auprès.

2. *Auprès denotes also proximity of place, and is construed with de :—Se maison est auprès de la mienné ; his house is next to mine.*

2. *Auprès implies a relation of domestic, servile, or at least dependant attachment :—être auprès d'un seigneur ; to be about a nobleman's person : L'ambassadeur de sa Majesté Britannique auprès du Roi très Chrétien ; the ambassador of his Britannic Majesty to the most Christian King : Il me demanda pour être auprès de son fils unique qui avoit à peu près mon age ; he asked me as a companion [of a subordinate condition] for his only son, &c.*

N O T E

Etre bien auprès de quelqu'un ; to be well with any one, to be in favour with him : N'être pas bien auprès de quelqu'un ; to be in disgrace with any one : Pouvoir beaucoup auprès de quelqu'un : Avoir du pouvoir auprès de quelqu'un ; to have some influence over, or with any one : Elle peut tout auprès de lui ; she can do any thing with him.

3. *Auprès denotes besides a relation of comparison :—La terre n'est rien auprès du reste de l'univers ; the earth is nothing in comparison of the rest of the universe.*

NOTE.

N O T E.

Auprès is also an Adverb of place, of the same signification as the Preposition:—*Je ne puis voir cela, si je ne suis auprès*, or *tout auprès*; if I am not *near it*, *close by it*: *Par auprès*; *by*, *near*, *a little on the side* [of any place]: *Il n'est pas besoin d'entrer dans la ville, il ne faut que passer par auprès*.

Proche.

Proche denotes also *proximity of place*, and is generally accompanied by *de*:—*Proche de la ville*; *near the city*: *Il demeure ici-proche*, [for *proche d'ici*], *he lives hard by*.

Vis-à-vis, à l'opposite.

Vis-à-vis, and *à l'opposite*, two compound Prepositions, are both attended by *de*, for the most part, and signify *over-against*. *Vis-à-vis* is said both of persons and things; *à l'opposite* is said of things and places, but not of persons:—*Je me plaçai vis-à-vis de lui*: *Il est vis-à-vis*; *he is over the way*, (where the regimen of *vis-à-vis* [*d'ici*, or something of that kind] is understood:) *À l'opposite de sa maison, est une colline*.

N O T E.

The Preposition *de* is sometimes left out, in common conversation, after *près*, *proche*, and *vis-à-vis*:—*Près l'église St. Paul*: *Proche le pont de Londres*, &c.

À côté [de].

À côté [de] serves also to form another compound Preposition, implying *proximity of place*:—*S'asseoir à côté de quelqu'un*; *to sit by one*:

Passer

Passer à côté du village; to pass by [the side of] the village.

Sans.

Sans denotes *exclusion* and *privation*, and consequently has a negative meaning, implied in its signification; it is sometimes construed with the Infinitive, and with the Conjunction *que* forms a compound Conjunction governing the Subjunctive Mood:—*Sans argent*; without money, moneyless: *Sans amis*; friendless: *Un homme sans moral*; an immoral man: *Sans parler*; without speaking: *Sans y penser*; without thinking of it, unwittingly, unawares: *Sans que j'y aille*; without my going there, &c.

N O T E.

When a second Verb or Noun is joined to the Verb or Noun governed by *sans*, and the word connecting the two English Verbs or Nouns is *or*, the connecting French word must be *ni*, instead of *sans* repeated, and preceded by the Conjunction *et*:—*La finance étoit alors sans fond ni rive*, (SULLY;) instead of *sans fond, et sans rive*: *Il s'en retourna sans boire ni manger*, (Id.) &c. Without bottom or coast; without eating or drinking.—This subject has already been discussed in a Note on the Chapter upon Negatives.

Selon, suivant.

Selon and *suivant* imply *according to*, *agreeably*, *conformably*, *pursuant to*, and govern the Noun immediately, without any other Preposition intervening; they form with *que* two compound Conjunctions, governing the Indicative:—*On l'a traité selon son mérite*; he has been treated according to his merit: *Selon moi*; *in my judgment* or

or opinion : C'est selon, [q. d. *selon les occurrences, selon les dispositions des choses* ;] that is as it happens ; may be so, may be not ; that is as it may be : Les hommes n'ont point changés *selon leurs coeurs*, (BRUYERE;) men are not changed in respect to their hearts, with regard to— : Je me conduirai en tout suivant vos avis ; according to, conformably to your advice : Il sera payé *selon qu'il travaillera* ; he shall be paid according as he shall work, &c.

Sur.

1. *Sur* denotes upon, on, over, both in the proper and figurative sense :—*Sur la table* ; upon the table : *Sur la rivière* ; upon the river : *Sur un vaisseau* ; on board a ship : Se reposer sur quelqu'un ; to rely upon one : Il se déchargea sur son frère du soin de le vaincre, (RAYNAL, Hist. Philosoph. et Politique, V. iii.) he transferred the business of conquering him to his brother ; q. d. unburthened himself of the care of conquering him [by laying it] on his brother.

2. *Sur* denotes time, as a particular one to which we approach, either expressed or understood :—Je partirai *sur les trois heures* ; I shall set out at, about, or by, three : *Sur le soir* ; towards the evening : *Sur la brune* ; in the dusk of the evening : Il est *sur [le tems de]* son départ ; he is upon the eve of his departure : Un boulet de canon qui étoit *sur sa fin*, (THOMAS;) which was nearly spent.

3. *Sur* is made use of in sentences describing admeasure-

admeasurament of space, when a comparison is made between the length and the breadth:—
De deux lieues de long, *sur une* dans sa plus grande largeur, (RAYNAL, &c.) two leagues in length *by one*, at its broadest part.

14. *Sur* denotes *superiority of power or excellence*:—Un prince qui règne *sur* plusieurs nations; who reigns over many nations: Les François ont de grands avantages *sur* les autres nations, &c.

N O T E.

Various Uses of *Sur*.

Sur la fin de la semaine; *against the end of the week*: Je me réglerai *sur* son exemple; I will regulate myself *by* his example: Il s'excusa *sur* son age; he excused himself *on account of* his age: Nous en étions *sur* un tel propos; we were *upon* such a topic: Il partit avec précipitation *sur* l'avis qu'on lui donna; he set out in great precipitation *upon* the tidings, &c.: Nous le ralliâmes beaucoup *sur* ce chapitre; we rallied him a good deal *about*, *on*, that subject: Je ne suis pas tout à fait de votre sentiment *sur* la prétendue frugalité dont vous voulez me faire fête; *respecting, concerning* the pretended frugality, &c.: Deliberer *sur* une proposition; to deliberate *upon* a proposal: Juger de quelqu'un *sur* sa mine; to judge of any one *by* his looks: Il ne porte jamais, or, il n'a jamais de l'argent *sur* soi; he never carries, or has any money *about* him: Avoir quelque chose *sur* le cœur; to have any thing *upon* one's mind: Se tenir *sur* la défensive; to stand *upon* the defensive: Marcher *sur* les traces de ses ancêtres; to tread *in* the footsteps of his ancestors: Le prendre *sur* le haut ton, or, *sur* un ton bien haut; to assume a haughty strain, to be on the high ropes, to behave arrogantly: Mettre la main *sur* quelqu'un, or, *sur* quelque chose; to lay hold *of* any person or thing: Mettre la main *sur* quelqu'un; to *strike* a man, to lay hands upon him to beat him: Mettre une question *sur* le tapis; to bring a subject *upon* the carpet: Prendre l'événement d'une chose *sur* soi; to answer for, take *upon* one's self, &c.: Tournez *sur* la droite, or, *sur* la gauche; turn *to* or *on* the right, &c.: Je vous l'accorde *sur*:

*sur votre bonne mine ; I grant it, on account of, for, in favour of your good looks, because I like your looks : Sur cela, ils se battirent ; thereupon, they fought : Ayez sur cela l'esprit en repos ; be quiet upon that score : Il sont en differend sur un seul point ; they differ only in one particular : Sur vingt écus, il y en avoit dix de faux ; of twenty crowns, there were ten bad or counterfeit : Nous avons pris force butin sur les ennemis ; we made large booty from the enemy : Il a été pris sur le fait ; he has been taken in the fact : Sur tout ; above all things, especially : Sur peine de la vie ; on pain of death : Sur le champ ; immediately, on the spot : Sur ces entrefaites ; during these transactions : Sur ce qu'il aprit que— ; upon hearing that—. Chambaud calls *sur ce que* a Conjunction governing the Indicative : let those who are acquainted with the French language, and consequently with the use of *ce que* governed by a Preposition, judge for themselves on the propriety of his observation.*

Au dessus, au dessous.

Au dessus and au dessous are two compound Prepositions denoting superiority and inferiority of age, place, rank, and other physical and moral circumstances, which require de before their regimen :—Loger au dessus, or au dessous, de quelqu'un ; to lodge above, or below, one : On enrôle tous les gens au dessus de quatorze ans, et au dessous de cinquante ; they enlist every body above fourteen years of age, and under fifty : Il fait, un peu trop, le familier avec ceux qui sont au dessus de lui ; with his betters : Il est au dessus de ses affaires ; he is beforehand with the world : Etre au dessous d'un autre en mérite, en bien, &c. ; to be inferior to one in merit, &c.

Au dessus and au dessous are supposed to become Adverbs ; but perhaps the truth is, that there is an ellipsis of their regimen :—Il occupe le premier

mier étage, et je loge *au dessus*, [i. e. *au dessus de lui*, or *du premier étage*:] Herode fit tuer tous les enfans de deux ans, et *au dessous*, [i. e. *au dessous de cet age*.]

Par dessus and *par dessous* are also Prepositions, but without requiring *de* before their regimen: they are also supposed to be used, sometimes, adverbially, but with as little reason as *au dessus* and *au dessous*.

N O T E.

Sur, sous, dans, and hors, are Prepositions always requiring a regimen; but *dessus, dessous, dedans, and debors*, which are Adverbs signifying as much as the Prepositions with a Noun, become also Prepositions used instead of, and in the same sense as, *sur, sous, dans, hors*, (of which they are composed) whenever they are preceded by the Prepositions *par* and *de*, or when they both serve for one and the same Noun, especially if the two Prepositions are of opposite or contrary meanings one to another; in which case *debors* governs its Noun, without the intervention of *de*, although *hors* is for the most part followed by it, before its regimen:—Est-il *dedans* *au débors* la maison? Cherchez *dessus* et *dessous* la table; not, *sur & sous*: Il n'est ni *dedans* ni *dessous* le coffre; not, *dans & sous*: La balle lui passa *par dessus* la tête; and not *sur*, which would imply that it had touched his head: Il passa *par dedans* la ville; which implies that he went into, and passed through the city; a meaning which could not be expressed by any single Preposition, nor, with such grammatical propriety, by any two other Prepositions: On le tira *de dessous* le lit; and not *de, sous*; for *sous* always implies contact: *de dessous* signify that he was under the bed, and that they drew him from under it.

These and such like cases excepted, *sur, sous, dans, hors*, must always be Prepositions; and *dessus, dessous, dedans, and debors*, Adverbs.

Vers, envers.

I. *Vers* denotes a tendency towards a certain side;

side, quarter, or situation :—Vers l'orient ; towards the east, &c.

2. Sometimes it signifies *the destination of an ambassador* :—*Envoyé vers les princes d'Allemagne* ; *envoy to the princes of Germany*.

3. *Vers* denotes time, as approaching to a certain portion of it :—*Vers les quatre heures* ; *about, near four o'clock*.

Envèrs is a Preposition implying *relation*, but used only in reference to *persons* :—*Sa tendresse envèrs eux* ; his tenderness towards or to them : *Ingrat envèrs son bienfaiteur* ; ungrateful to his benefactor : *Je vous défendrai envèrs et contre tous* ; I will defend you *against all manner of persons*.

À l'égard.

À l'égard (*as to, or for, with respect to, in comparison of,*) requires *de* before its regimen :—*À l'égard du prix, nous en conviendrons* ; *with respect to the price, &c.* : *À l'égard de ce que vous me devez* ; *with regard to, as to what you owe me* : *La terre est petite, à l'égard du soleil* ; *the earth is small, in comparison of the sun*.

Where the relation is to a *Pronoun*, and not to a *Noun*, the pronominal possessive Adjective must be used in agreement with *égard* as with a *Noun*, instead of the personal Pronoun of the Genitive :—*à mon égard* ; *for my sake, on my account, towards me* : *On doit être honnête à son égard, et à l'égard des autres* ; *one ought to be honest with respect to himself, and to others*.

Au

Au lieu.

Au lieu requires also *de* before the next Noun or Infinitive, and implies *substitution* :—*Au lieu de* celui que j'attendois, il est venu un homme de sa part ; *instead of* the man I expected, &c. : *Au lieu de* secourir son ami, il l'a trahi, *instead of* succouring his friend, &c.

Au lieu que is a Conjunction governing the Indicative :—Il ne songe qu'à son plaisir, *au lieu qu'il devroit veiller à ses affaires* :—He minds nothing but his pleasure, whereas *on the contrary*, he should attend to his affairs.

À rebours, au rebours.

À rebours, au rebours, (*against the hair or grain, the wrong way, preposterously, cross, quite contrary*,) is also used as a Preposition with *de* :—Vergeter du drap *à rebours*; (q. d. *à rebours du drap*;) to brush cloth *against the grain*: Il fait tout *à rebours, au rebours de ce qu'on lui dit*, he does every thing *the wrong way, the reverse of what he is bidden*.

À travers, au travers.

À travers, au travers, (*through, across*,) are two compound Prepositions, of which *à travers* comes immediately before its regimen; *au travers* takes *de* between it and its regimen :—*A travers le corps, au travers du corps*; through the body : Il se fit jour *au travers des ennemis, à travers*

travers les ennemis, he made his way through the enemy: *À travers champs*; across the fields: Regarder *au travers d'une jalouse*; to look through a lattice.

À travers is sometimes used adverbially:—Parler *à tort & à travers*; to talk at random.

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS concerning the FRENCH PREPOSITIONS.

The following Prepositions, *de*, *contre*, *sur*, *sous*, *sans*, must always be repeated before each Noun governed:—Beaucoup *d'amour* pour le plaisir, et *de haine* pour le travail: Je suis *sans amis*, *sans protection*, *sans secours*, et je meurs de faim.

N O T E.

This rule does not contradict the observation before made concerning *sans*-and *ni*; for in the example just given, we see that there is no connection between the Nouns governed by *sans*, and that there are more than two Nouns, in the sentence, which refer to it, which makes a material difference.

These others must in like manner be repeated, when the Noun or Nouns are not synonymous, or nearly of the same signification, with the first Noun; viz. *à*, *par*, *pour*, *avec*:—Il est venu à bout de ses dessins, *par* les ruses, et *par* les armes de mes ennemis: Il est venu à bout de ses dessins *par le secours* et les *armes* de mes ennemis, &c. &c. &c.

¶. These

q. These six Prepositions have the right of governing others before the Noun governed ; *de*, *pour*, *excepté*, *bors*, *jusque*, *par*.

1. *De* governs these eight ; *entre*, *après*, *chez*, *avec*, *par*, *en*, *deffus*, *deffous* :—

Plusieurs *d'entre eux* y allèrent ; many of [or from among] them went thither.

Je viens de chez vous ; I come from your house.

Je sors d'avec lui ; I have just left him, i. e. I come out from [being] with him.

Le partie d'en haut ; the upper part.

De par le roi ; in the king's name.

2. *Pour* governs these five ; *après*, *dans*, *devant*, *derrière*, *à côté* :—

Ce sera pour après le diner ; it will be far after dinner.

C'est pour dans quinze jours ; it is far a fortnight hence.

Ce morceau est destiné pour devant la porte, celui-là *pour à côté*, et l'autre *pour derrière le lit* ; this piece is designed for before the door, that for the side, and the other for behind the bed.

3. *Jusque* governs these six ; *à*, *par*, *en*, *dans*, *sur*, *sous* :—

Jusqu'au plancher ; as high, as far, as, the cieling.

Jusques dans le lit ; even in the bed.

Jusques par delà la rivière ; even beyond the river, &c. &c.

4. *Par* governs these eight ; *chez à côté*, *deffus*, *deffous*, *devant*, *derrière*, *deça*, *delà* :—

Passez par chez nous ; call at our house.

Par dessus la tête ; above one's head.

Par delà la mèr ; beyond sea, &c.

5. 6. Excepté and hors govern these nineteen ; *chez, dans, sous, sur, devant, derrière, parmi, vers, avant, après, entre, depuis, avec, par, durant, pendant, à, de,* and *en.* Examples may be found every where.

¶. Prepositions always come before the Noun which they govern, and never after, as we sometimes see in English :

Avec qui, or à qui voulez-vous que je parle ? Who will you have me speak with ?

Except these three, *après, durant, près* :— *Quelque tems après ; sa vie durant ; à son humeur près.* But it is not necessary that *après* and *durant* should come after the Noun, nor that *près* should, except in that particular acceptation.

¶. From a great many Nouns, Prepositions are formed, by putting before them some Preposition, especially *à, au, aux, en*, which compound parts of speech, although they govern the next Noun in the Genitive, yet nevertheless have all the true, connective force of simple Prepositions, and are therefore to be considered as real Prepositions :—*à milieu de la compagnie ; en présence de ses amis ; à l'insçu de son père ; à raison de vingt pour cent.*

OBSERVATIONS

SIXTEEN

OBSERVATIONS on the Manner of rendering certain ENGLISH PREPOSITIONS and PARTICLES.

These English Prepositions, *again*, *back*, *away*, *up*, *down*, *in*, *out of*, *over*, *forth*, etc. often-times make part of the signification of the Verbs which they attend, and are not particularly expressed in French, but by the comprehensive force of the Verb:—*To keep back*, [*retenir*] ; to *take away*, [*emporter*] ; to *come up*, [*monter*] ; to *take up arms*, [*prendre les armes*] ; to *lay them down*, *les quitter*, *les mettre bas* ; to *pull off*, [*arracher*] ; to *go, or set out*, [*partir*] ; to *go forth* [*sortir*] ; &c.

On board, *aboard*, a ship, is *à bord d'un vaisseau*; but to *embark on board* a ship is, *s'embarquer sur un vaisseau*, *monter sur un vaisseau*.

About answers to divers French Prepositions:

- *About the end of the year*; } *sur.*
- *Sur la fin de l'année.* }
- I come to you *about* that business; } *touchant.*
- Je viens vous voir touchant cette affaire.* }
- *About the latter end of that book*; } *vers.*
- Vers la fin de ce livre.* }
- What do you cry *about* the streets? } *dans.*
- Qu'est ce qu'on crie dans * les rues?* }

* *Or, par les rues?*

He took him <i>about</i> the middle ;	<i>par.</i>
Il le prit <i>par</i> le milieu du corps.	
I have no money <i>about</i> me ;	<i>sur.*</i>
Je n'ai point d'argent <i>sur</i> moi.	
What are you <i>about</i> ?	<i>à.</i>
À quoi êtes-vous occupé ?	
It is not so <i>about</i> us ;	[nous.] <i>chez</i> &
Il n'en est pas ainsi <i>chez</i> , or <i>parmi</i> <i>parmi</i> .	
Look <i>about</i> you ;	<i>à.*</i>
Prenez garde à vous.	
In do not like to have people of you stamp <i>about</i> me ;	<i>auprès.</i>
Je n'aime pas que des gens de votre plumage soyent <i>auprès</i> de moi.	[&c., &c.]

Against, which signifies *contre* in its proper and general sense, sometimes denotes time, and in such acception is rendered differently :

Against the end of the week ;	<i>sur.</i>
Sur la fin de la semaine.	
Your shoes will be made <i>against</i> after to-	<i>pour.</i>
morrow ;	
Vôs souliers seront faits <i>pour</i> après de-	
main.	
Or else simply, <i>après</i> demain.	

Against is also a Conjunction, expressed variously in French :

Against he comes ; *en attendant qu'il vienne* :
Let all things be ready *against* we come back ;
que tout soit prêt à *notre retour*.

Both, before two Nouns copulated by *and*, is rendered in French by *et* before each Noun, or by *tant* before the first Noun, and *que* before the second; or it is not expressed at all:—*Both* young *and* rich; *et* jeune *et* riche; *tant* jeune *que* riche: *Both* by sea and land; *par* mér *et* *par* terre, &c.

The English Particle *on*, coming after a Verb whose action it denotes the continuation of, is rendered by the French Verb *continuer*, or the Adverb *toujours*:

Play *on*, *continuez de jouer*, or *jouez toujours*.

Away, a Particle variously and elegantly used, cannot be rendered into French, separately from the Verb, which expresses its force diversely, according to the extent of its own meaning, and the genius of the language:—*Away* with this, *ôtez tout ceci*; *away* with him to the university, *qu'on l'envoie à l'université*; I cannot *away* with it, *je ne saurois souffrir cela, ou le digérer*; *away* with these fopperies, *defaitez-vous de ces sottises*; to eat a bit and *away*, *manger un morceau à la hâte*, *avant que de partir*; to scold one *away*, *obliger quelqu'un à s'en aller à force de le gronder*; he shall not go *away* with it so, *il n'en sera pas quitte à si bon marché*.

CHAPTER IX.

Of CONJUNCTIONS.

WE have already given a list of the Conjunctions governing the Indicative, Subjunctive, and Infinitive Moods, when we treated of those Moods. We have now only to say a word or two on some particular Conjunctions which require consideration.

Que [Conjunction] is of most extensive use, and is the Substitute of a variety of words, as will be seen presently.

It is used in the second part of a period, joined to the first by the enclitic *et*, instead of repeating the Conjunction *si*, expressed at the beginning of the sentence; and that *que* governs the Subjunctive:—*S'il le souhaite, et que vous le vouliez* [q. d. *si vous le voulez*.]

It is used in the middle of a sentence, in the sense and place of *comme*, *lorsque*, though they be not expressed before:—*Ils arrivèrent que j'allois partir*; *César n'étoit encore qu'édile qu'il fit faire secrètement la statue de Marius*; (VERTOT.)

NOTE.

The two examples just cited, suggest an observation, by the way, concerning the constitution of their Tenses, as compared, the one sentence with the other. In the first, the *present* Tense comes first, and the Member connected by *que* is *imperfect*: In the second, the *imperfect* Tense comes first, and the Member connected by *que* is *perfect*. This difference is accountable:—*Ils arrivèrent*, and *Cesar fit*

fit faire la statue de Marius, are the principal circumstances of the narration, which must be *perfect*, be the form of the sentences what it will. So *j'allors partir*, and *il étoit édile*, are only circumstances purely incidental, and must be *imperfect*, whether placed first or last in the sentence, and in all and every of its modifications.

Que has the force of *peut-être* in the second Member, where *peut-être* has occurred in the first:—*Peut-être l'aime-t-il*, mais *qu'il ne veut l'épouser*.

N. O T. E.

We must not be surprised at this substitution; we must recollect the true, original force of *peut-être*, *il peut-être que*, and then putting the sentence into the following form, we shall see the propriety of this use of *que*:—[*Il*] *peut être [qu'] il l'aime*, mais [*il peut-être*] *qu'il ne veut pas l'épouser*.

Que is used instead of *à moins que*, *avant que*, *sans que*, and, like those Conjunctions, governs the Subjunctive; and requires the Negative *ne* before the next Verb:—*Je ne serai point content que, je ne le sache*, I shall never be contented, unless I know it: *Je n'irai point qu'elle ne soit venue*; before, unless, without, she be come: *Je ne l'ai point servie que, je n'en aye eu du chagrin*, for *sans que je n'en aye*, etc.

Que is used for *jusqu'à ce que*, and governs, like it, the Subjunctive:—*Attendez qu'il vienne*; stay till he comes.

Que is used for *cependant*:—*Il me verroit périr, qu'il n'en seroit point touche*; he would see me die, yet he would not, ect.: *Il auroit tout l'or du monde qu'il en voudroit encore d'avantage*; he might have, yet he would wish, ect.;

etc.: Ce ne la seroit pas, qu'il seroit trop tard pour s'en dédire, [Rousseau's Emile]; it might not, should it not, be her, yet nevertheless it would be too late to retract.

NOTE.

These sentences might be turned as well thus:—*Quand même ce ne la seroit pas, cependant il seroit trop tard*; or simply,—Il seroit trop tard pour s'en dédire.

Que de is sometimes used elliptically for *rien de meilleur que de*:—Il n'est que de prendre le ton haut avec les prétendus importans; there is nothing better than, nothing like, assuming an authoritative air with, etc.: Il n'est chère que d'avaritieux [il n'est meilleure chère que celle d'un avaritieux,] Prov.; there is nothing like a miser's feast. (BUFFIER.)

Que is used instead of *afin que*, and as such governs the Subjunctive:—Aprochez que je vous baise; draw near [in order] that I may kiss you: Je vous prie de venir ici, que je vous dise quelque chose; I beseech you to come here, that I may tell you something.

Que is used instead of *de peur que*, and accordingly governs the Subjunctive, and requires the Negative *ne* before the Verb:—N'aprochez pas de ce chien qu'il ne vous morde; don't come near that dog, lest he bite you: Depêchons que quelqu'un n'è vienne; let us make haste, for fear that somebody should come in.

Que is used, in the place of *si* or *dèsque*, in the beginning of a sentence, and governs the Subjunctive:—Qu'il boive de la bière, il est malade

malade à la mort; if, when, or as soon as he drinks beer, he is as sick as death.

Que is used in the middle of a sentence, after *il y a*, instead of *depuis que*:—Il n'y a qu'une heure qu'il est parti; 'tis but an hour since he went away.

Que is used for *de sorte que*:—Si vous n'êtes sage, je vous étrillerai, que rien n'y manquera; if you are not good, I will flog you so that nothing shall be like it—soundly.

Que is used before the second Verb of a sentence beginning with the Conjunction *à peine*, of which it serves to form a part [*à peine que*]:—*à peine eut il achevé de parler qu'il expira*; he had hardly ended speaking before he expired.

Que is used after a Comparative, in the sense of *than*:—Le mari est plus raisonnable que la femme; more reasonable than: *Plutôt que de le faire*; rather than do it.

Que, followed by an Adjective, signifies *comme*; and if the Adjective be preceded by *tout*, *tout-que* may be very well expressed by *quoique*, the Indicative Verb being then changed into a Subjunctive one:—Malade qu'il est, il ne sauroit vaquer à ses affaires; sick as he is, in his condition, he cannot, etc.: *Tout savant qu'il est, il a bien peu de jugement*, [or, *quoiqu'il soit savant*]; as learned as he is, though he be learned, etc.

Que, after a Noun of time, signifies *quand*:—Le jour qu'il partit; the day that [q. d. when] he set out.

Que, after a Noun of place, is used in the sense

sense of *où* :—C'est à la cour qu'on apprend les manières polies ; 'tis at court that (q. d. where) we learn, &c.

Que is sometimes the sign of the Imperative :—*Qu'il vienne* ; *qu'ils tiennent*.

NOTE.

Que is left out in the following *Imperative* phrases :—*Vienne qui voudra* ; come who will : *Sauve qui peut* ; save himself who can, let every one make the best of his way : *Que m'aime me suive*, &c.

Que is used in the beginning of sentences [with an Indicative] which stand, for the most part, as titles to chapters, sections, &c. :—*Qu'on ne peut prouver l'immortalité de l'âme*, avant que d'en connoître la nature; et que la nature est incompréhensible ; *that we cannot*, &c. and *that its nature*, &c.

Que is used to connect members of sentences together, being followed by the Indicative or Subjunctive Mood, accordingly as the Verb of the first member requires the one- or the other after it :—*Je vous assure que cela est ainsi* ; *je doute que cela fait ainsi*.

Que, in the middle of a sentence beginning with *c'est* personal, is entirely a *demonstrative Particle*, (and not *expletive*, as Chambaud considers it) having the force of *namely* :—*C'est une passion dangereuse que le jeu* ; it is a dangerous passion, *namely*, gaming : *C'est une sorte de honte que d'être malheureux* ; 'tis a sort of shame, *namely*, to be wretched.

Que, immediately preceded by *c'est*, signifies *parceque* :—*C'est que je ne savois pas que* ; it is

[or was] *tabat* [q. d. because] I did not know that. And when a word comes between *c'est* and *que*, *c'est-que* is redundant :—*C'est alors que je vis ; then I saw.*

Que, being followed by *si* in the beginning of a member of a sentence, is a kind of connective Particle, occurring commonly in narrations, and answering very nearly to *autem* in Latin :—*Que si vous dites, but if you say.—“En vain on portoit des plaintes de ces excès aux decemvirs ; les malheureux étoient rejettés avec mépris, et la faveur seule, ou des vues d'intérêt tenoient lieu de droit et de justice ; que si quelque citoyen, par un reste de liberté, étoit assez hardi pour faire éclater son ressentiment, les tyrant le faisoient battre à coups de verge comme un exilé ; d'autres étoient exilés ; il y en eut même qu'on fit mourir.” VERTOT, Rev. Rom. L. v. Si autem aliquis è civibus, animo libertate adhuc accenso, non has injurias tacité ferret.*

Que is used after *tèl*, or any Adjective preceded by the Adverb *si* :—*Soyez tèl que vous voulez être estimé ; be really such as you would wish to be taken for : Je ne suis pas si fou que de le croire ; I am not so foolish as, &c.*

Que is used after *autre* and *autrement*, in the sense of *than* :—*Il est tout autre que vous ne disiez.*

Que being used in the beginning of a sentence with the Subjunctive (then a true *optative*) denotes *wishing* or *imprecation* :—*Que Dieu vous bénisse ! God bless you ! Que je meure si j'en fais quelque chose ! may I die if, &c.*

NOTE.

Sometimes also *que* is left out in this kind of sentences :—
Dieu vous bénisse ! Grand bien vous fasse ! La peste l'étouffe !

Que is also used in the beginning of the sentence with the Subjunctive, to express, by an exclamation, one's *surprise at*, *aversion from*, and *reluctance to*, something, in which case there is a Verb grammatically understood before *que* :—
Qu'il se soit oublié jusqu'à ce point ; [I wonder, or is it possible] that he should have forgotten himself so far ! Que j'agisse contre ma conscience ! must I, or can I, act against my conscience !

Que is used adverbially in the beginning of sentences of exclamation with the Indicative, and is rendered into English by *how*, or *how much* :—*Que vous aimez à parler ! Qu'il fait crotté ! Qu'elle est amiable !*—Sometimes the Verb is omitted :—*Que de plaisir et de peine à la fois !*—Sometimes also, *que* comes after the Noun, especially if the exclamation imply *pity*, *indignation*, or any such *passion* :—*Le malheureux qu'il est ! L'indigne action que la sienne !*

Que, in the beginning of an interrogative sentence, signifies *comment* :—*Que savez-vous si l'âme de votre père n'étoit pas passée dans cette bête ? How do you know, &c.*

Que, beginning an interrogative sentence, and followed by the Negative *ne* only, stands for *pourquoi* :—*Que ne parlez-vous ? Why don't you speak ?*

N O T E.

But when *que* is followed by the double Negative *ne-pas*, it is then a Pronoun, and stands for *quelle chose* :—*Que ne fait il pas pour s'enrichir?* What does not he do to enrich himself? *Que ne lui dites vous pas pour l'en détourner?* Is there *any thing which* you did not tell him, to deter him from it?

Que ne sometimes is **exclamatory**, and denotes an earnest wish and desire for a thing :—*Que ne suis-je déjà aux portes de Valence!* GIL BLAS; Would I were already, i. e. why am I not already, at the gates of Valencia!

Que in the middle of a sentence, preceded by *ne*, with one or more words between, signifies *seulement* :—*Le roi n'a en vue que le bien public;* the king has *only* the public good in view, i. e. has *nothing but* that, &c.

N O T E.

Chambaud joins the following use of *que* **Pronominal** to the applications of *que* **Conjunction**, so closely, that I am inclined to believe that he supposed it to be a Conjunction in that instance also.—*Que*, preceded by *ne*, and followed by the Infinitive *faire*, without a Preposition, signifies *nothing*; or *to need not*, if *faire* is followed by another Infinitive with *de* :—*J= n'ai que faire de cela;* I have *nothing* to do with that: *Je n'ai que faire d'y aller;* I *need not*, I have *no need*, or *occasion*, to go there.—We also say with a Dative following *faire*,—*Je n'ai que faire à cela;* I am not concerned with that.—In all these instances *que* signifies, literally, *what*, i. e. *any thing which* :—I have not *any thing which* I may do, or *to do*; *je n'ai que faire de cela:* I have not *any thing to do*, by going there; *je n'ai que faire d'y aller:* I have not *any thing to do*, in relation to that; *je n'ai que faire à cela.* The least consideration will shew that *que* is **Pronominal** in the examples before us, and has some such meaning as that here given to it.

Que,

Que, preceded by any Tense of *faire* with the Negative *ne*, and followed by an Infinitive, without any Preposition at all, denotes the continuance of the action signified by the second Verb: —*Il ne fait que boire et manger*; he is continually eating and drinking, does nothing but eat and drink.

Que, preceded by any Tense of *faire* with the Negative *ne*, and followed by an Infinitive, with the Preposition *de*, signifies that the action of the second Verb was but just begun; and is accordingly, with *faire*, rendered by *just*, or *just now*: —*Nous ne fesons que de commencer*; we do but just begin: *Il ne fesoit que d'achever quand*—; he had but just finished when—; (i. e. he had done nothing, or was doing nothing, after finishing, when—.)

When is both *quand* and *lorsque*, in the use of which there is a distinction to be made: *quand* denotes time in a more especial manner; *lorsque*, in a degree secondary to some circumstance expressed, which it has principally in view: —*Ne manquez pas de venir quand je vous appellerai*; at the time that I shall call you.

And when a question is asked, we always do it with *quand*, and never with *lorsque*, the nature of such a question implying an immediate reference to time: —*Quand viendrez-vous?* À tel ou tel tems.

Au tems des premières conquêtes *lorsque* les émigrations étoient les plus fréquentes. *Les premières conquêtes* is the circumstance of reference to *lorsque*; *tems* is only secondarily and relatively so, as, *le tems des conquêtes*, &c.

N O T E.

As a farther explanation of the difference between *quand* and *lorsque*, I beg leave to cite the following passage from Girard's *Synonimes*:—"Quand paraît plus propre pour marquer la circonstance du temps; & lorsque semble mieux convenir pour marquer celle de l'occasion:—Ainsi je dirois, Il faut travailler *quand* on est jeune: Il faut être docile, *lorsque* on nous reprend à propos: On ne fait jamais tant de folies que *quand* on aime, on se fait aimer *lorsqu'on aime*: Le chanoine va à l'église *quand* la cloche l'avertit d'y aller; & il fait son devoir, *lorsqu'il affiche aux offices*."—This difference may at first sight appear frivolous, but it is a real and an important one; and we may easily discover it by substituting *dans le temps que*, or *au moment que*, in the place of *quand* and *lorsque*, and we shall find that they will answer very well for *quand*, but not for *lorsque*:—Il faut travailler *quand au temps qu'*, on est jeune: Il faut être docile *lorsque au temps qu'*, on nous reprend à propos. In the first instance the substitution is justifiable; for *youth* is a particular *time* or *season* of a man's life, and the idea of time is properly joined to it; but *seasonable reproof* marks no time or precise period, and derives no new force from being attributed to any particular moment; it is only an *occasional circumstance always calling for our docility*: so,—On ne fait jamais tant de folies que *quand au temps qu'*, on aime: On se fait aimer *lorsque au temps qu'*, on aime. In the first substitution we see a manifest propriety, for at the *time*, during the *season*, of our being in love we commit many follies; but in the second change an error is strikingly apparent, for it is no specified time which dates our being beloved, it is the *occasion* of our loving which inspires the reciprocal passion; and though this exists in time, itself, yet we are not called upon to consider it as taking place at any stated period, whether a day, month, or year, but only as happening in general: the *time when* does not affect us at all; the *fact* does, entirely.—From all that has been said, we may gather, that when the idea of time stands in the sentence as an immediate, principal, point of consideration, *quand* ought to be used; but when the circumstance itself is the main object in the sentence, independant of, and unconnected with the idea of time, *lorsque* is most proper.

Quand

Quand being construed with the Conditional, has the signification of *although*; and *même*, or *bien même*, is sometimes added to *quand*, giving some new force to its meaning:—

Quand il consentiroit ; quand même, quand bien même il consentiroit, cela ne se pourroit pas faire : although he would consent ; although he would even consent.—

Such kind of sentences may also be turned by the Verb in the Perfect of the Subjunctive, with its Nominative Pronoun following it, without any Conjunction at all:—

Fût elle riche à millions, quand même elle seroit riche à millions, je n'en voudrois point ; though she should be worth millions, I would not have her.

Si is never construed with the Conditional, as *if* is in English; but we use in French the Imperfect, to express that Conditional: — *If he should come ; s'il venoit.*

Si after *et* signifies *yet*: — *Il travaille toujours & si il meurt de faim ;* he is always working, and *yet* is starving. But this is rather a vulgarism.

D'où viennent que (a Conjunction Interrogative) requires immediately after it the Pronoun or Noun which expresses the subject of the principal Verb of the sentence; whereas, with the other Conjunctions Interrogative, it comes after the Verb; (the reason of this being, that in fact the Verb of the question is *viennent*, having for its Nominative *il*, understood, after it:)—
D'où viennent que vous ne voulez pas faire cela ? or,

Pourquoi

Pourquoi ne voulez-vous pas faire cela? Whence comes it that you won't do that? Why won't you do it?

Pourtant, cependant, and toutefois, signify however, yet. Toutefois begins to grow obsolete: pourtant always comes after the Verb, or between the Auxiliary and the Participle if the Tense is compound, and is more positive and decisive in its meaning than cependant. Cependant may indifferently begin the sentence, or come after the Verb, and they both make a contrast with these two other Conjunctions, quoique and bien que:—Quoiqu'il ait tant étudié, il ne fait pourtant pas cela; or, cependant il ne fait pas cela; although—, yet—, &c.

Donc, c'est pourquoi, are two other Conjunctions, signifying therefore, then. C'est pourquoi always begins the sentence; and donc but seldom, generally occupying the second or third place in the sentence; EXCEPT, however, when it serves to draw a consequence from premises:—C'est pourquoi vous m'obligerez de faire cela; or, vous m'obligerez donc de faire cela: Il rougit; donc il est coupable.

Encore, as an Adverb, signifies again, yet, still: but as a Conjunction Copulative it signifies even, also, and else, besides, in such expressions as these:—Qui encore? Who else? Quoi encore? What else? what besides?

But encore is, besides, a Conjunction Adversative, especially when et si come before it, and as such is properly rendered nevertheless, besides, yet:—Il est extrêmement riche, encore n'est-il pas

pas content, et si encore il se plaint ; he is very rich, nevertheless he complains, yet he is not contented.

Encore has great force in the following use of it, where it seems to be copulative :—*Encore s'il ne faisoit pas l'entendu, on lui passeroit son ignorance*; if he would *but* cease to pretend to so much knowledge, if he was *only* less conceited, *even* if he did not assume the airs of a man of abilities :—*Encore s'il savoit quelque chose, mais il ne fait rien du tout*; if he did *but* know something, &c. but he knows nothing at all.

N O T E.

Observe that this last sentence is elliptical; a member is wanting between *quelque chose* and *mais*, which we may thus supply :—*Encore s'il savoit quelque chose, [on pourrait souffrir son ignorance sur d'autres sujets] mais il ne fait rien du tout*.

Au moins, du moins, and pour le moins, are three Conjunctions of Restriction, signifying *at least*, but with some difference of one from the other.

Au moins is used where no member precedes that in which it occurs, in opposition to it :—*Prenez garde au moins de vous retirer de bonne heure.*

Du moins is proper where two members are opposed to each other, its place being in the second :—*Si vous ne voulez pas prendre son parti, du moins ne vous declarez pas contre lui.*

Pour le moins is applicable to such cases as the following :—*Vous n'avez jamais été le voir: J'ai été le voir deux fois pour le moins.*

N O T E.

N O T E.

Sometimes also *tout* is joined to *au moins* and *du moins*, and increases their restrictive sense. And here we may observe by the way, that this Augmentative [*tout*] is likewise prefixed to the following comparative terms, *comme*, *de même que*, *aussi bien que*, *autant que*, *aussi peu que*, and may be englighed by *just* or *full*:—*Vous faites tout comme il vous plait*; you live *just* as you please: *Je vis tout aussi bien en Angleterre qu'en France*; I live *full* as well in England as in France.

These English Conjunctions, *either* and *or*, used in the same sentence before Nouns and Verbs, are rendered into French; *either* by *soit* before the first Noun or Verb, and *or* by *ou* before the other or others; or by *soit* before each Noun or Verb; which last way is the most forcible:—*Either through gratitude, or clemency, or policy, he pardoned him*; *soit par reconnaissance, ou par clémence, ou par politique, il lui pardonna*; *or, soit par reconnaissance, soit par clémence, soit par politique, &c.*

N O T E.

In sentences of this kind, whether the members be joined by *soit* and *ou*, or *soit* repeated, the Preposition *par* is very frequently omitted, though necessarily understood:—“*Ceux qui avoient conservé quelques principes de douceur et d'humanité soit par éffe, soit fanaticisme, n'avancèrent pas leur raison, ni, jusqu'à un certain point, leur industrie,*” (RAYNAL, Hist. Philosoph. & Politique;) *either [through] idleness, or through fanaticism*:—“*Les peuples du midi soit par éffe d'esprit, ou foiblesse de corps, semblent être nés pour le despotisme.*” Id.

The same English Conjunctions, upon occasions like the following, are rendered into French, by *soit* repeated, by *soit*—*ou*, or by *ou* repeated:

An

An exercise either of the body or the mind ;
 Un exercice soit du corps soit de l'esprit ;
 Un exercice soit du corps ou de l'esprit.

Either he is a wise man or a fool ;
Ou il est sage, ou il est fou.

These English Conjunctions, *whether* and *or*,
 are rendered into French by *soit que* repeated, or
 by *soit que* before the first part of the sentence,
 and *ou que* before the other :—

Whether you have done that *or no* ;
Soit que vous ayez fait cela, *soit que* vous ne
 l'ayez pas fait ;
Soit que vous ayez fait cela, *ou que* vous ne
 l'ayez pas fait ; *or only*, *ou non*.

Or else is rendered into French by *ou bien*, *or*
ou only, *or si non* :—

The case is so, *or else* I should have been de-
 ceived ; la chose est ainsi, *ou bien*, *or*, *ou l'on*
m'auroit trompé.

☞ It may not be improper to observe here,
 that some words answer to divers parts of speech,
 according to their grammatical application : thus
après, in the first of the following examples, is
 an Adverb ; in the second a Preposition ; and in
 the third a Conjunction :—

Il parla après.
Il parla après moi.
Après qu'il eut parlé.

CHAPTER X.

OBSERVATIONS upon the CONSTRUCTION, USE,
and SIGNIFICATION of certain WORDS, which
most frequently occur in Conversation; with some
few other PARTICULARS, wherein chiefly consists
the Idiom of the FRENCH LANGUAGE.

1. *AMITIE* (friendship) is often used in the
singular for *favour, act of kindness*:—
Faites-moi cette amitié.

Amitiés (in the Plural) is said of *caresses* and
other marks of attention and fondness:—*Il m'a fait
mille amitiés; he made much of me, was profuse in
his civility to me.*

Amitiés is also used to express those *compliments*
of regard and remembrance, which pass between
friends in the course of letter-writing:—*Madame
de la Fayette vous fait mille amitiés.* (*Lettres de
SEVIGNE*.)

2. *Amours* (from *amour*, love) in the Plural
is feminine;—*Il n'est point de laides amours,*
(never seemed a mistress foul;) EXCEPT when it
signifies *Cupids*:—*Il y a autour d'elle mille petits
amours;* a thousand little *Cupids* hover round her.

3. *An, année*, (a year) are not to be used pro-
miscuously: *an* is properly only the denomina-
tion of that particular portion of time which it
expresses; *année* is the portion of time itself, in-
cluding a certain number of days and months.
Upon this principle of distinction are, in general,

to

to be accounted for, all the following circumstances in the use of the two words in question :

An is used,

1. After Nouns of the *Cardinal Number* :—
J'ai trente ans ; I am thirty years old : Il y a vingt ans passés ; it was twenty years ago.

2. Before Nouns of the *Ordinal Number* used as *dates* :—*L'an mil sept cent quarante neuf* ; the year 1749, (where the Cardinal Number is used for the Ordinal) : *L'an quinzième de l'empire*.

We say,—*Le Jour de l'An* ; New Year's-day : *Le premier jour de l'an* ; the first day of the year.

Année is used,

1. After Nouns of the *Ordinal Number*, when one or more years *inclusively* are implied :—*Elle est dans sa vingtième année* ; she is in her twentieth year.

2. After the Article ; because in such cases the *name* of a year is signified, and not merely the *name* of it :—*L'année passée* ; *l'année dernière* ; *l'année qui vient*, or *l'année prochaine*.

But we say,—*L'an de Grace*, the year of Grace ; *l'an du monde*, ou *de notre Seigneur*, A. M.—A. D. ; because they have the nature of *dates*.

3. With an Epithet or Adjective, signifying *any* thing but mensuration of time ; when the *year* is, for the most part, considered as more than a *name* :—*Une bonne & heureuse année !* A happy new year ! *Nôs belles années passent bien vite*.

4. In cases like the following, a reference to the distinction, already laid down, between *an* and *année*, will evidently shew that *année* must be used :—*Il reste encore trois mois de l'année.* The mention made of the year, as *passing* but *not past*, clearly points at the portion of time it contains, which we know is to be expressed by *année*: and as this is generally our view when we introduce a *year* or *years* before or after *Nouns*, so we almost always use *année* with them.

4. *Accoutumer*, (to use;) *s'accoutumer*, (to use or accustom one's self;) *être accoustumé*, (to be used;) require the Preposition *à* before the next Infinitive; and *avoir coutume* and *avoir accoutumé* (which begin to be obsolete) require *de*:—

Il l'accoustumé à le suivre; he uses him to follow him.

Il s'accoustumé à lire; he uses himself to read.

Je suis accoustumé à souffrir; I am used to suffering.

J'ai coutume de perdre; I generally lose, I am accustomed to lose.

5. *Agir*, (to act) preceded by the Particle *en*, and followed by an Adverb, signifies to *do*, *act*, *deal with*, to *use* one :—*En agir bien avec ou envers quelqu'un*; to do well by him, deal well with him: *Il en agit mal envers elle*; he uses her ill.

And when *agir* is used impersonally, and in the reflected form, (*il s'agit*, *il s'agissoit*,) it is englished as follows :—*De quoi s'agit il?* What is the matter? *Il s'agit de faire cela*; that is the business.

business in question : *Il ne s'agit pas de peu de choses ; 'tis not a trifling concern.*

6. *Aller* (to go) in the Present and Imperfect, coming before an Infinitive without a Preposition, denotes a thing which one is, or was, about to do, or which is, or was, about to fall out or happen; and is rendered by, *to be going*, *to be ready*, *to be about*, and sometimes only by the sign of the Future :—*Je vais étudier*; I am going to study : *Je vais*, or, *je m'en vais* partir tout à l'heure ; I shall set out presently.

Nay, these two Tenses are even construed with the very Verb *aller* in that sense :—

Je vais m'en aller; I am about to go away.

Nous allions y aller; we were just going there.

7. *Venir* (to come) in the Present and Imperfect, coming before an Infinitive with the Preposition *de*, denotes a thing *just now* done, and is generally expressed by that phrase :—*Je viens de dîner*; I have just dined : *Le roi vient de le nommer à cet évêché*; —has lately nominated him to, &c.

Venir before the Infinitive with the Preposition *à* denotes, and is englighed by, *to prepare*, *begin*, *set*, *go about* any thing :—*Quand il vint à danser*; when he began to dance.

8. *Aller* and *venir* sometimes servé only to denote the possibility there is for the action of the Verb following to take place, and are englighed by, *to happen*, *to chance*, and sometimes by a conditional Tense only :—*Il seroit perdu, si sa femme alloit, or venoit à, faire cela*; if his wife should chance

chance to know it, or *should* know it: *Voyez où j'en serois, si elle alloit croire cela;* if she *should happen* to believe that.

9. *Aller*, *venir*, and *revenir*, are said of ships *bound from one place to another*:—*Ce vaisseau vient de la Havane, et va à Cadiz;* —is bound from the Havanna to Cadiz: *Un vaisseau qui revient de l'Amérique;* a ship *homeward bound* from America.

10. *Aller* and *faire* are said of things which *fit*, or *do not fit well*, as *cloaths*, *wigs*, &c.:—*Cet habit vous va bien;* that coat *fits you well*: *Cette grande perruque ne lui va or fait pas bien.*

11. *Il y va*, the Impersonal, formed from *aller* and *y*, requires the Noun in the Genitive, and is englisched thus:—*Il y va de l'honneur;* honour is *at stake*: *Il y alloit de la vie;* life was concerned in it, was *at stake*, in *jeopardy*.

12. *Aparoître* and *paroître*, (to appear.) The first is said only of *spirits* and *ghosts*:—*Un ange lui apparut;* an angel appeared to him: *Les spectre n'apparurent que la nuit.* *Paroître* signifies to appear in any other sense:—*Le soleil paroît;* the sun appears, or *shews itself*: *Il paroît une comète;* a comet appears: *Il me paroît que—;* it *appears to me that*—.

13. *Avoir* (to have) is used instead of *être*, when we speak of being *old*, *hungry*, *thirsty*, *cold* and *hot* (relating to the weather as it affects men):

(men) :—*Il a six ans*; he is six years old : *J'ai faim*; I am hungry : *Je n'ai pas soif*; I am not thirsty : *Elle a chaud*; she is warm.

NOTE.

Observe that *chaud* and *froid* are used as Nouns; and therefore when a woman speaks, she must not say, *J'ai chaude*, but, *J'ai chaud*; which is literally, I have cold.

If any particular part of the body is said to be *hot* or *cold*, the French Noun, expressive of that part, must be in the Dative :—*J'ai froid aux pieds*; which is rendered, my feet are cold, &c.

So, to be diseased in any part of the body is turned into French in the same manner :—*J'ai mal à la tête*; I have a pain in my head, my head aches : *Il a mal aux yeux*; he has sore eyes.

14. *Avoir beau*, used to denote a thing to be done in vain, is variously englisched :—

J'ai beau l'attendre, il ne viendra pas; I may look long enough, he will not come.

Il a beau faire, il n'en viendra jamais à bout; let him do what he will, or what he can, notwithstanding all his efforts, he will never bring it about.

Vous avez beau lui donner des avis, elle ne veut suivre que sa tête; it signifies nothing to advise her ; in spite of all your advice, she will follow her own way.

Vous avez beau faire, et beau dire, il n'en sera ni plus ni moins; you may do and say what you please ; do and say what you will, it will be so nevertheless.

Il aura beau dire et beau faire, je n'en rebattrai rien ; he may do and say what he pleases, I will not bate an inch.

Le pauvre homme eut beau appeller du secours ; it was to no purpose that, &c.

15. *N'avoir garde* signifies *not to have inclination or power to do a thing*, and is englished accordingly :—*Il n'a garde de tromper, il est trop honnête ; he is too honest a man, to think or wish to deceive :* *Il n'a garde de s'enfuir, il a la jambe rompue ; he can't run away, for his leg is broken.*

16. *Avoir affaire de* is *to want, to have occasion for* :—

J'ai affaire d'argent ; I have occasion for money : J'ai affaire de vous, ne sortez pas ; I want you, don't go out : Qu'ai-je affaire de tout cela ? What is all that to me ?

Qu'ai-je affaire d'aller me tuer à travailler pour des gens dont je ne me soucié point ? Why should I go and work myself to death, for—, &c.

17. *Au reste, du reste.* *Au reste* signifies *befides, as for the rest* ; *du reste* signifies *but for the rest* : they must by no means be confounded. *Au reste* is used when to that which has gone before, something is added of the same kind, and as the sequel to it :—*Cette poursuite ne se peut faire qu'à grands frâis au reste elle a peu de biens, huit enfans, et est endettée ; as for the rest, besides, and then, her fortune is small, &c.*

Du reste is used when that which follows is not of the same nature with what went before, or is said

said in contradiction and opposition to it:—Il éroit colère, bizarre, prodigue du reste homme d'honneur et bon ami; *in other respects*, but yet, but for the rest, &c.

Au reste sometimes, elegantly, comes after the first word, or words, of the sentence; *du reste* always comes the first.

18. *Savoir* and *connoître* both signify to know; with this difference, that *savoir* is said of intellectual knowledge, and *connoître* of personal knowledge arising from the evidence of our senses:—*Savez-vous votre leçon?* Do you know, can you say your lesson? *Il sait le Latin;* he understands Latin: *Je sais ce que vous dites;* I know what you say: *Il sait mieux qu'il ne dit;* he knows better than he says he does: *Faire savoir quelque chose à quelqu'un;* to inform one, acquaint him, of a thing.

Whenever to know can be resolved by to understand, it is *savoir*; otherwise it is *connoître*.

Connoître is proper in cases like the following, agreeably to the rule before laid down:—*Je connais cet homme là;* I know that man: *Je connais ce pays là;* I am acquainted with that country.

¶. *Savoir* is used idiomatically in these instances:—

Savoir bon gré à quelqu'un d'une chose; to take a thing kindly of any one, (to know, acknowledge (that we owe) good-will to any one for something bestowed on, or done for us.)

Lui en savoir mauvais gré; to take it unkindly, amiss of him.

N.

19. *Devoir,*

19. *Devoir*, (*to owe*) when it comes before an Infinitive without a Preposition, denotes only futurity in the action of the Verb following, and is turned by the Future of the Second Verb in English, or by the Verb *to be* (in a Tense correspondent to that in which *devoir* is used) before an Infinitive:—*Il doit venir*; *he is to come*: *Elle doit partir demain*; *she will set out*, *she means to set out to-morrow*.

Devoir sometimes has a consequential force:—*Il est tout nu*, *il doit avoir froid*; *he is quite naked*, *he must needs be very cold*.

20. *Ecouter, entendre.*

Ecouter sometimes signifies to hearken and to listen to, with a reference merely to the natural sense of hearing:—*écoutez*, *heark'e*: *M'écourez ce que nous disons*; *he is listening to what we are saying*. And sometimes to mind, attend to, in regard to the action of the mind:—*écoutez ce qu'on dit*; *mind what is said*.

Entendre is sometimes used in the sense of overbearing, i. e. bearing those who do not mean to be heard:—*Il nous a entendus tout le temps*; *he has overheard us all the time*.

21. *Emplir, remplir, (to fill.)*

Emplir is said of liquids only, in a natural sense:—*Emplir un tonneau, une bouteille, &c.*

Remplir, except in its signification of reduplication, is applied to any thing *not liquid*, and in a figurative sense:

Remplissez la verre: *fill up the glass again*:

Remplir

Remplir ses coffres d'or et d'argent; to fill his coffers with gold and silver.

Vous m'avez rempli le cœur de joie; you have filled my heart, &c.

22. *Enfermer, renfermer.*

Enfermer is said of what is locked or shut up in a box, trunk, chamber, &c.:—J'ai enfermé l'argent dans mon bureau; I have locked up the money in my bureau.

Renfermer, of what nature produces, and is contained in the earth:—Que de trésors la terre ne renferme-t-elle dans son sein! what treasures does not the earth contain in her bosom!

23. *Enfer*, in the Christian sense of the word, is not used in the Plural Number:—Les peines de l'enfer; the pains of hell: Except in this article of the creed:—Il est descendu aux enfers; he descended into hell.

In the Pagan acceptation it is used in the Plural:—Mercure conduisoit les ames aux enfers; Mercury conducted the souls to the shades below.

24. *Entendre* is both to bear and to understand, according as the thing is the object of the sense of bearing, or that of the understanding:—Je vous entendis; I bear you, I understand you: Il entend cela mieux que vous; he understands that better than you do.

Faire entendre has the force of to intimate.

To understand signifies also *savoir*, when the

thing spoken of is an art or science:—*Elle sait le Latin; she understands Latin.*

And when the object of the Verb, i. e., the thing supposed to be understood, is some substance obvious to the senses, whose quality is in question, to understand is made by connoître in the reflected form, with the Prepositions *en* or *à*:—*Il se connaît en toiles; he understands cloths: Vous y connaissez-vous; do you understand these things?*

25. *Espérer* (to hope) is never said in French of what is present or past, because hope is the expectation of things to come, though not certain or sure: therefore do not say,—*J'espère que vous vous portez bien; j'espère qu'il s'est bien porté, à la campagne;* but say rather,—*Il paroît, il me semble, je presument, que vous vous portez bien, je me flatte, j'ai lieu de croire, je m'imagine, qu'il s'est bien porté à la campagne:* Or simply ask the question,—*Vous portez vous bien? Comment s'est-il porté à la campagne?*

26. *Éveiller* and *réveiller*, (to awake, to call up) have each a peculiar force.

Éveiller is said of a regular time, and intimates something natural and usual:—*On m'éveille tous les matins à cinq heures; ne m'éveillez demain qu'à sept.*

Réveiller implies something irregular and sudden, extraordinary and unusual:—*Un grand bruit m'a réveillé; le ministre veut qu'on le réveille toutes les fois qu'il arrive un courrier.*

27. *Faire,*

27. *Faire*, in its primary signification, is to make, to do; but it has many more particular significations, which are much in use.

1. *Faire*, before an Infinitive, without any Preposition, signifies generally to get, bid, cause, or order, with the Noun, expressing the object after the Verb in the Infinitive, and not before, as in English; and when it signifies to cause or order, the French Infinitive is turned from the active voice into the Passive; the agent, if there is any expressed, being governed in the Dative:

Faites lire cet enfant; make that child read;
Faites venir cet homme; bid that man come.

Il le fit mettre à mort; he caused him to be put to death: *Elle fit assassinir son amant à un brave qui jouissoit de ses faveurs*; she caused her lover to be assassinated by a bully who—

2. Before the Infinitive of *faire*, it signifies to bespeak, get made:—*Il a fait faire une montre d'or à répétition*; he has bespoken a gold repeating watch.

3. It signifies to take care, to see that, do in such a manner that; and then it governs the Subjunctive with *que*:—*Faites qu'il soit content*; *faites ensorte qu'il soit content*; see that he is contented, satisfied, &c.

4. To counterfeit, to pretend to, set up for, personate, act:—*Ceux qui font les fous à propos ne le sont guères*; those who counterfeit themselves mad, when it is convenient for them to be so, are hardly so in reality: *Il fait le philosophe*; he sets up for a philosopher: *Elle fait*

la belle; she *pretends* to be handsome, *ois* the beauty: *Vous ferez l'avare*; you will play, *per-*
sonate the miser.

5. It has a variety of significations, in con-
formity to the regimen following it:

Faire la chambre; to clean, *set to rights*, the
chamber: *Faire la cuisine*; to cook, or dress
victuals: *Faire le lit*; to make up the bed: *Faire des armes*; to fence: *Faire l'office*; to
perform divine service: *L'air fait ressort*; the air
is *an elastic body*: *Faire sentinel*e, *faire la garde*;
to stand *centry*, *be upon guard*, &c.

6. *Se faire* is to *use*, *accustom one's self to*, to
form one's self to:—*Se faire à la fatigue*; to *use*,
ensure one's self to fatigue.

7. *Faire*, used impersonally with an Adjective,
expresses the state of the weather:

Il fait froid; it is cold: *Il fait beau*, or beau
temps; it is fine weather: *Il fait divin*, (*SEVIGNE*)
'tis heavenly weather.

8. *Faire* is used as *to do* in English, i. e., in-
stead of repeating the Verb which has just been
expressed in the sentence, especially after a
Comparative; but this is not so common as in
English:—*Il apprend mieux qu'il ne fesoit*; he
learns better than he did.

28. *Faire grace*, *faire une grace*, deserve to be
distinguished.

1. *Faire grace* signifies to *forgive*, *excuse*, *per-*
don:—*Je vous fais grace de la moitié des dépens*;
I forgive, excuse you half the charges: *Le roi*
vous fait grâce de tout ce que vous avez lui

lui à fait grace; the king has granted him his pardon.

Faire une grace is to do a favour:

Faites moi une grace; do me a favour.

We also say,—*Il lui fait grace*, for, he favours, befriends him.

Dieu lui en fasse le grace! God grant he may!

29. *Fleurir* signifies, in its proper sense, to blossom; and figurately, to flourish, to be in repose. In order to distinguish between these two significations, an irregularity in some of the inflexions of this Verb has been introduced, which is worth remarking. The regular Participle in *ant*, of *fleurir*, we know, is *fleurissant*:—*Les arbres fleurissants*; the trees being in blossom. But in the figurative sense it is *florissant*:—*Un état florissant*; a flourishing state, &c.

The same particularity prevails in the Imperfect, under the same circumstances:

Cet arbre fleurissoit deux fois tous les ans.

Les arts et les sciences florissoient alors.

We say figuratively, with the Participle of this Verb,—*Un style fleuri*; a florid style: *Un teint fleuri*; a high, blooming complexion.

30. *Se fier* (to trust) may be construed with *à*, *en*, or *sur*:

Se fier à son mérite; to trust to one's merit.

Se fier sur son mérite; to rely on.

Se fier en; to confide in.

31. *Fournir* (to afford; supply with) governs

either an Accusative of the person, and a Genitive of the thing; or a Dative of the person, and an Accusative of the thing:—*La rivière le fournit de sel*; literally—furnishes him with salt.

La rivière lui fournit du sel; literally—furnishes salt to him.

The former mode of expression signifies properly that the river furnishes him with as much salt as he can use in his family; the latter may signify, besides, that the river affords him so great a quantity of salt, as to sell and trade therewith; (at least the signification does not restrain the quantity merely to his own consumption, and may therefore be extended to the sense supposed by Chambaud.)

32. *Gens* (people) is very worthy notice, in its constructions. *Gens* is a Plural Noun, which is never said of a determinate number of people, unless attended by an Adjective: therefore we do not say,—*Trois ou quatre gens*, &c. as in English *three or four people*, &c.: but we say,—*Trois bonnes gens*, (*three genteel persons*): *Dix jeunes gens*; *ten young people*: and without an Adjective,—*Trois ou quatre personnes*.

Gens is Masculine, when it comes before its Adjective; and Feminine when it comes after it:—*Ce sont des gens résolus*; *ce sont de bonnes gens*.

But though the Adjective coming before *gens* be Feminine, yet if there follows another Adjective, or a Participle, this last, by the figure *syllepsis*, must be Masculine:—*Il y a de certaines gens*,

gens, qui sont bien *sots*; ce sont les *meilleurs gens* que j'ai jamais *vus*.

The Adjective *Tous*, coming before *gens*, is put in the Masculine, when it is attended by no other Adjective, or by one, which is common in its termination; but when the Adjective is Feminine, *tout* must be put in the Feminine also:—*Tous les gens qui*; *tous les bonnées gens*; *toutes les vieilles gens*.

Gens signifies also *domestics*, and in that sense is used with a determinate number, though without an intervening Adjective:—*Il arriva avec quatre de ses gens*; *with four of his men, servants, or people*.

33. *Bonne grace*, in the Singular, implies a *genteel graceful manner and deportment*:—*Elle a bonne grace*; *she is genteel*: *Il salue de bonne grace*; *he bows in a genteel manner*.

In the Plural, *bonnes graces* signifies *favour, esteem, &c.*?—*Il est dans ses bonnes graces*; *he is in her favour, good graces*, (as we also say in English): *Conservez moi l'honneur de vos bonnes graces*; *do me the honour to continue me in your esteem*.

34. *Jouer* (*to play*) is used both in an active and neuter sense:

Jouer quelque chose; *to play for something*, (i. e. properly, *to risk something*): *Jouons un écu*; *let us play for a crown*.

The Particle *at*, used after the word *playing*, before the names of *games* and *sportive exercises*, is expressed in French by *à*:—*Jouer aux cartes*; *to play at cards*: *Jouer au piquet aux échecs*,

à la paume, aux barres; to play at piquet, chess, tennis, running-bars, &c.

And the Particle *en*, used after *playing*, before the names of instruments of music, by *de*:—*Jouer des instrumens, du violon, de la flûte, &c.*; to play upon instruments, upon the violin, flute, &c.

PHRASES.

Jouer une pièce de théâtre; to act a play.

Jouer gros jeu; to play high or deep.

Jouer quelqu'un; to make a fool of one, play upon him.

Jouer au plus fin avec quelqu'un; to vie with any one in cunning, to play at sharps with any one.

Jouer de la prunelle; to ogle or leer at—.

Jouer à quitter ou à double; literally, to play at double or quit; figuratively, to run all hazards.

Jouer une pièce [or *jouer pièce, SULLY*] *un tour à quelqu'un*; or, *lui en jouer d'une*; to play or serve one a trick, put a trick upon one.

Jouer before an Infinitive with the Preposition *à*, signifies to hazard, venture, run the risk of:—*Vous jouez à vous faire tuer*; you venture your life, run the risk of losing it.

Se jouer is to sport, divert one's self:—*Se jouer de quelqu'un*; to make sport for one's self of any one, to make a fool of him.

Jouer is, besides, used in some phrases like these:—*Ne vous jouez pas à lui*; don't meddle with him: *Ne vous y jouez pas*; don't fool with it; let it alone.

35. *Jour* and *journée*, (a day.) The fundamental difference between these words, as well

as

as all like them, is the same as that which has already been pointed out between *an* and *année*: the one being the name of the portion of time, the other the portion so named. The following loose observations of Chambaud on their use and application will not however be wholly unprofitable:

Journée is usually understood and said of what is done during one day:—

Payer la journée aux ouvriers; to pay the workmen for their day's labour.

Marcher à grandes journées; to advance by forced marches, marching a great distance each day.

Il y a huit journées de chemin; it is an eight days' journey.

We say,—*La journée d'Actium*, *la journée de Fontenoy*; the day—the battle of Actium, and of Fontenoy.

We use *jour* only when we speak of time, and absolutely:—Les jours sont courts: Il y a plus de huit jours que cela est passé.

We say indifferently,—Violà un beau jour, and, une belle journée, this is a fine day; J'ai travaillé tout le jour, and, toute la journée; tout defining, evidently, the extent of the meaning of both.

The following phrase,—Vivre au *jour* la journée, to live from hand to mouth, i. e. to live each day, by the day's work or gain,—shews the difference between *jour* and *journée*.

There is the same difference between matin and matinée, soir and soirée.

36. *Laïsser* signifies to let, leave, and sometimes to forget:—Il ne veut pas me laïsser parler; he won't let me speak: *Laïssez ici votre manteau*; leave your cloak here: J'ai laissé ma bourse sur ma table; I have left or forgotten my purse upon the table.

Laïsser being construed with *ne* and *pas*, and governing and preceding an Infinitive with *de*, denotes only affirmation in the next Verb, and is rendered into English by yet, still, nevertheless, for all that:—Cela ne laisse pas d'être vrai, quoique vous en doutiez; although you doubt it, it is nevertheless true, &c.

37. *Livres* and *francs* have the same signification, but are not used indiscriminately; yet so perplexed is their use, that it is difficult to give any clear and easy directions concerning it.

In the enumeration of sums, when *mille* is followed by *cent*; as also when the terms *de rente*, *de pension*, are added; *livres* is used, and not *francs*:—Six mille neuf cent livres; 6900 livres: Il a quatre mille livres *de pension*; he has a pension of 4000 livres: Il a vingt mille livres *de rente*; he has 20,000 livres *per annum*.

Un, joined to another number, takes always *livre*, and not *franc*, after it:—Vingt et une livre, trente et une livre, &c.

When the sum is simply *thousands*, i. e. without being followed by *cent*, we must use *francs*, and not *livres*:—Sa maison lui a couté vingt mille francs: Un sac de mille francs: Sa charge vaut cent mille francs. We say too,—Quatre francs, six francs, sept francs, huit francs, to vingt francs,

francs, quarante francs, quatre-vingt francs, cent francs.

When the sum is *bundrds*, and exceeds one hundred, and especially when we speak of a debt, we use, indifferently, *livres* or *francs*:—*Il me doit deux cens livres, or deux cens francs: Je dois quinze ou seize cens livres or francs.*

Instead of *une livre* or *un franc*, of *deux livres*, *trois livres*, we say, for the first, *vingt sous*; for the second, *quarante sous*; and for the third, *un écu*: instead of *cinq livres* or *cinq francs*, we use *cent sous*: instead of *trente livres* or *francs*, *dix écus*; and of *soixante*, *vingt écus*: but when some odd *sous* make part of the sum, we are then always to use *livre*, and not *franc*:—*Quatre livres dix sous, six livres huit sous.*

When people distinguish, as in countries foreign from France, between the *livre sterling*, or *pound sterling*, and the *livre Tournois* or the *French livre*, they must always use *livre*:—*Il a apporté de France dix mille livres Tournois c'est à dire près de cinq cens livres sterling; he has brought from France ten thousand livres*; i. e. near five hundred pounds sterling.

☞ A *livre* is twenty *sous*; a *pound sterling*, twenty-two *livres*; consequently one *livre* must be worth near eleven pence *sterling*, and a *sous* something more than an *halfpenny*.

38. *Un coup de main* signifies a bold action:—*Un homme de main*; a man fit for a bold and hazardous enterprize: *Des coups de main*; handy blows: *Main forte*; assistance, help, succour: *À pleines*

À pleines mains; largely, plentifully; *sous main*; underhand, secretly.

Donner or prêter la main à quelqu'un; to help one.

Donner les mains à quelque chose; to consent to a thing.

Être en main, or à main pour faire une chose; to be in a convenient posture or situation to do a thing.

En venir aux mains; to come to blows, to engage.

Préser main forte à quelqu'un; to succour, come to bis assistance.

Donner de main en main; to hand about.

Cela est fait à la main; that is a mere collusion.

Lever la main; to take one's oath before a judge, to swear, to lay one's hand upon the bible.

To have a good band at any thing may be well rendered,—*S'entendre à faire quelque chose*.

ad. 39. *Marcher* and *se promener* both signify to walk, with this difference, that *marcher* is said of going out for business, and imports going from one place to another on foot; and *se promener* is said of taking a walk, exercising one's self for pleasure:—*J'ai beaucoup marché aujourd'hui*; I have walked a great deal to-day: *Je me suis promené aujourd'hui une heure dans le jardin*; I walked an hour to-day in the garden.

We say,—*Se promener à cheval*, or, *en carrosse*; to take a ride, an airing on horseback, or in a coach.

Se

Se promener sur l'eau, sur la rivière, to go upon the water, &c.

Envoyer quelqu'un se promener, to send one packing, about his business.

Promener is also used *actively* :—

Promener quelqu'un, to lead one about, take him with one to walk.

Promener sa vue sur différens objets, to extend, carry one's view to.—

Promener, dans les mers d'Asie, un pavillon formidable, (RAYNAL, Hist. Philosoph. & Politique;) to display, all over the Asiatic seas, a formidable standard—from one sea to another.

Marcher sur quelqu'un, or sur quelque chose; to tread upon, &c.

Marcher sur les traces de quelqu'un, to follow one's steps.

Marcher droit; to act uprightly, properly.

Je le ferai bien marcher droit; I'll keep him to his good behaviour.

40. *Marier, épouser, se marier, (to marry.)* The two first are active, and the last is a reflected Verb, signifying *to marry*, with a particular distinction, as will appear in the following examples :—

Monsieur A—doit épouser Mademoiselle B—, & c'est M. le Curé qui les mariera.

Elle ne veut point se marier.

41. *Mener and porter, (to carry;) amener and aporter, (to bring.)*

Mener is said of animals, whether rational or irrational, which have by nature the power of

walking,

walking, and have not been disabled from it by accident or malady.

Porter is said of things which have no power of beginning motion, and of animals, whether rational or irrational, which have not yet walked, or can no longer walk, through natural or contingent infirmity:—

Menez monsieur chez cette dame ; carry, take, conduct the gentleman to that lady's house,

Menez le cheval à l'écurie, ou chez le maréchal, &c. &c.

Portez y vos chansons nouvelles ; carry there your new songs.

Portez cette étoffe chez le tailleur, &c.

Cet enfant est las, portez-le à la maison ; — because he cannot walk.

Again, *mener* and *amener*, *porter* and *aporter*, import a relation of place, and answer to the questions *where*, *whither*: *amener* and *aporter* are used with reference to the local Adverbs, *here*, *hither*; and *mener* and *porter*, to *there*, *thither*:—

Amenez-moi votre ami ; bring your friend to me : Aportez-moi votre ouvrage, bring me your work.

Il les y a menés ; he carried them thither.

Portez votre ouvrage à votre sœur ; carry your work to your sister.

42. *Mourir*, (to die) joined with certain Substantives, assumes a sense correspondent to their signification, in an extreme and excessive degree:—

Mourir,

<i>de faim,</i>	to starve with hunger.
<i>de soif,</i>	to be choked with thirst.
<i>de froid,</i>	to be extremely cold.
<i>de chaud,</i>	to be excessively hot.
<i>de peur,</i>	to be affrighted to death.
<i>Mourir</i>	
{ <i>d'envie,</i>	{ to long impatiently, eagerly for-
<i>d'impatience,</i>	
{ <i>de chagrin,</i>	{ to grieve one's self to death.
<i>de déplaisir,</i>	to be mortally vexed.
<i>de douleur,</i>	to be in an agony of grief, miserable beyond measure.

43. *Neuf* and *nouveau* (new) have something peculiar in their construction: *neuf* always comes after the Noun; and *nouveau* may either be put before or after. But there is this difference in their application, that *neuf* is only used when we speak of material objects which belong to mechanical arts, and *nouveau* of immaterial things which belong to liberal arts, and relate to the mind, or else are produced by nature:—*Un habit neuf*; a new suit of cloaths: *Un nouvel ouvrage*, or, *un ouvrage nouveau*; a new performance.

Of these two expressions,—*un livre neuf*, and *un livre nouveau*,—the former is said of a book on its first coming out of the bookseller's shop, not yet used or worn; the latter imports its contents to have been newly composed, and, in short, considers it merely as the work of the mind. *Neuf* is also said with respect to what is newly done; and *nouveau*, to what surprises one, as strange and unexpected: thus, *une maison nouvelle*, is an house which he had not seen before, and which therefore is new and strange to us; but, *une maison neuve* is an house *newly built*, without any regard being paid to the effect which the sight of it produces in us.

44. *Parens* is applicable to all those with whom we are connected by the ties of blood.

His or her *parent* is, *son père ou sa mère*; and his *parents*, *son pere et sa mere*, or *ses père et mère*.

45. *Personne* has been considered in the Syntax already, as a Pronoun; but it is besides a Noun Feminine of very extensive use, answering in its signification to *a man* as well as a *woman*, when mentioned without any particular reference to sex:—*Je vis hièr la personne dont vous parlez*, I saw the person (whether man or woman) of whom you are speaking; (*l'homme* and *la femme* being used only out of scorn and contempt, and *le monsieur* and *la dame* only in derision and by way of banter, or when we speak of persons in a station eminently superior to one's own:) *Des personnes honnêtes & civiles*; genteel and civil people or persons.

Although the Noun *personne*, when used in the Plural, requires an Adjective Feminine, yet if two Adjectives, or some Pronouns referring to it, meet in the same sentence, the Pronouns and the second Adjective must be Masculine, regard being then had, by the figure *synecdoche*, to the thing signified by the word, viz. men in general, and not the grammatical Gender of the word:—*Les personnes consummées dans la vertu, ont en toutes choses une droiture d'esprit, & une attention judicieuse qui les empêche d'être médisans.*

It is to be observed, that in order to make the Adjective, which refers to *personnes*, Masculine,

1st. That

1st. There must be a sufficient number of words between the Noun and Adjective, to divert the attention from the Gender of *personnes* to its import, as in the aforesaid instance.

2dly. That the Adjective must not be governed by the Verb which has *personnes* for its subject; otherwise it must be Feminine, whatever number of words there may be between *personnes* and the Adjective: thus we say,—*Les personnes, qui ont le cœur bon, & les sentiments de l'âme élevés, sont extraordinairement généreuses.*

Nor do we use the Masculine Pronoun *ils*, though never so far from *personnes*, when it is near the Adjective Feminine, referring to *personnes*, lest the eye and the ear should be shocked by it.—*Les personnes, qui ont l'esprit pénétrant, une expérience de beaucoup d'années, sont presque toujours si judicieuses, qu'elles si trompent rarement.*

Again, we don't say,—*Les personnes qui ont une belle, sont si raviées, quand elles trouvent occasion de reconnoître un bienfait, qu'ils ne laissent jamais échapper;* because the first Pronoun (*elles*) determines the Gender of the second: but we say,—*Il y a à Paris une société de personnes très savantes, auxquelles l'Europe est très dévouée d'un nombre infini de connaissances utiles; ils n'ont en vue que la perfection des arts et des sciences; & c'est dans ce motif, qu'ils font tous les jours d'utiles découvertes:* in which instance the Pronoun *ils* refers to *men*, implied in *personnes*, and is therefore Masculine, being sufficiently removed from *personnes* to admirably serve the purpose.

the syllepsis ; and the Adjective *savantes* is Feminine, because it is so near to the Feminine *personnes* ; a similar reason also influencing the Gender of *auxquelles*, inasmuch as that is generally contiguous to the Adjective Feminine.

N O T E.

And here, as mention has been made of the figure *syllepsis*, we will take leave to digress for a moment, in order to cite another instance of it with respect to number :—*De deux mille hommes qu'ils étoient, six cents demeurèrent sur la place, & le reste se sauva*, par la connoissance qu'ils avoient du pays :—where we see *ils avoient* used, with a reference to *le reste*, on account of the signification it implies of a plurality of men ; its situation being sufficiently remote to reconcile the eye and ear to the syllepsis, while the immediate connection of *se sauva* with *le reste* precludes the use of it there with any propriety.

46. *Pâque* is spelt without an *s*, and is Masculine, when it signifies *Easter-day* :—*Pâque est bien resûlé et bien chaud cette année* ; *Easter* is very late and very hot this year. But it is Feminine when it is used for the *Jewish Passover* :—*Manger la Pâque* ; to eat the *Passover* : *Préparer la Pâque* ; to prepare the *Passover*.

Pâques (in the Plural Number) signifying the *devotions of that season*, is Feminine :—*Mes Pâques sont faites* ; I have received the sacrament this Easter.

We say ironically of immoral people, who receive the sacrament at that time,—*Faire de belles Pâques*.

47. *Se passer de quelque chose*, (to go or do without a thing) :—*Si vous ne voulez pas me donner cela, il faudra bien que je m'en passe* ; if you won't give me that, I must go without it.

48. *Penser*

48. *Penser* and *songer* both signify to think, with the Preposition à before their regimen:—
Penser à quelque chose; to think of a thing, consider it: *Vous ne songez pas à ce que vous faites*, (which is better than, *vous ne pensez pas*, &c.) you do not think of what you are doing. But when to think is used as a Verb *Active* and not *Neuter*, it is *penser* and not *songer*:—*On pense de vous cent choses désavantageuses*; people think an hundred things to your disadvantage.

Penser à mal signifies, to have some ill design:

—*Il ne pense pas à mal*; he means no harm.

Penser, in the compound of the Present, and the simple Preterite, before an Infinitive without a Preposition, signifies any thing that was like, or near to have been done, but has not been done, and is englished by, to be near, to be like, to be within a trifle of:—

Il pensa se noyer; he was nearly drowned.

J'ai pensé mourir; I had like to have died.

Nous pensâmes nous couper la gorge; we were very near cutting one another's throats.

49. *Plus*, *davantage*, *encore*, all signify more, but in different ways. *Plus* is never used at the end of an affirmative sentence; therefore say,—
Donnez m'en davantage; give me more of it: *En voulez-vous davantage?* en voulez-vous encore? Will you have any more? *Encore un peu*; a little more: and never, *Donnez m'en plus*, *En voulez-vous plus?* Un peu encore.

Davantage, at the end of negative sentences, requires that two Negatives should be used, after the accustomed manner of French negation, whereas

whereas *plus*, in the same situation, requires only one, viz. *ne*!—*Je n'en veux pas davantage*, or, *je n'en veux plus*; I do not chuse any more of it.

D'avantage can never govern a Noun after it, as *plus*; therefore we must not say,—*Mangez d'avantage de pain avec votre viande*; but, *Mangez plus de pain avec, &c. &c.*

Encore, at the end of negative sentences, does not signify *more*, but *as yet*, or *again*:—*Je n'en veux pas encore*; I won't have any yet.

50. *Plaire* (to please) must be attended by *à* before a Noun or Pronoun, i. e. governs a Dative:—*Plaire à quelqu'un*; to please one.

The Impersonal *il plait* is rendered personally into English, with the Dative made the Nominative of the English Verb:—*S'il vous plait*; if you please: *S'il plait à Dieu*; if God pleases.

With respect to the verbal regimen of *plaire*, a difference is visible when it is personal, and when it is impersonal. When it is personal, which seems to be but rare in this form, its regimen is preceded by *à*:—*Cela lui plaît à dire*; he is pleased to say so: When it is impersonal, its regimen is preceded by *de*:—*Il a plu au roi d'ordonner*; the king has been pleased to order.

It is besides made a reflected Verb:—

Se plaire à quelque chose; to take pleasure or delight in a thing.

Il se plaît à faire du mal; he delights in [doing] mischief.

51. *Peinture, portrait, and tableau*, all signify a picture

a picture or painting, but each with something peculiar when taken in its proper sense.

1st. *Peinture* signifies the art of painting and drawing:—Il excelle dans la peinture, &c.

2d. The colours in general:—La peinture de ce tableau n'est pas encore sèche; the colours of that picture are not yet dry.

3d. What is painted upon a wall or wainscot:—On ne peut rien distinguer aux peintures du dôme de S. Paul: Les peintures du dôme des Invalides sont des chef d'oeuvres de l'art, &c. &c.

Portrait signifies, a picture drawn after the life to represent any particular person:—Voilà mon portrait; that is my picture:—Le portrait du roi ne lui ressemble pas, &c.

Tableau signifies, and is said of any picture upon wood, cloth, or brass, representing a piece of history, landscape, building; in short, anything which can be thought of, even what is drawn from the imagination, or after a statue, bust, nay after a picture taken from the life, is not called *portrait*, but *tableau*.

In a figurative sense, these three words are considered as synonymous;

Il a fait { une agréable peinture { de toutes les personnes de la cour;
{ un agréable portrait { sonnes de la cour;
{ un agréable tableau { cour;

He has given an agreeable description of all the persons at court.

52. *Prendre*, (to take, seize, lay hold of,) is used in several other senses besides those its natural ones:—

Le

Le feu a pris à sa maison ; the fire broke out in his house.

Prendre les devans ; to get the start of one, to be beforehand with him.

Se bien prendre à faire une chose, s'y prendre de la bonne manière ; to go the right way to work, to take a right method or course.

Il s'y prend mal ; he goes the wrong way to work.

De la manière dont il s'y prend ; as he goes to work, as he manages matters.

S'en prendre à quelqu'un, or à quelque chose ; to lay the blame of it upon any one, or any thing.

Se prendre à quelque chose ; to lay hold of any thing.

Les gens qui se noyent se prennent à tout ce qu'ils trouvent ; a sinking man will catch at a straw.

Prendre parti ; to enlist one's self as a soldier.

Prendre son parti ; to take one's resolution, come to a determination.

53. *Garde*, (care, heed, &c.) joined to different words, serves to form some particular phrases, deserving notice.

Prendre garde, se donner de garde, (to take heed, beware) :—Prendre garde à quelque chose ; to take care of a thing, mind it, take notice of it.

Se donner de garde de quelqu'un ; to beware of any one.

N'avoir garde de ; to be far from, to take care not so.—Englished also as follows :

*Il n'a garde de courir, il a une jambe rompue ;
How can be run, when one of his legs are broken?
(he has no mind to run, because he cannot.)*

*Je n'ai garde d'y aller ; I have no mind, I am
not such a fool as to go thither, I'll be sure to
keep away. ↗ Se bien garder de faire une chose ;
to avoid doing a thing, to be sure not to do it.*

54. *Rompre, briser, casser,* (to break) have something particular in their application, which we shall do well to remark.

Rompre is said of a thing broken asunder.
Briser, of things broken in pieces.

Un des piés de la table est *rompu* ; one of the feet of the table is *broken*.

La table est *brisée* ; the table is *broken* to pieces.

Rompre is said of metals, stones, and wood ; and
Casser is said of wares, glass, and such like
fragile substances :

La Colonne est *rompue*, or *brisée* ; the post or
pillar is *broken* asunder, or in pieces.

Le pot est *cassé*, les verres sont *cassées*, &c. &c.

(↗ To bruise is *bouffuer*, *faire une bosse* ; and to
split, *fendre*.)

In a figurative sense, we say—*Casser un testament*, *un contrat*, *des voeux*, (and never *briser*,
or *rompre*, *un testament*, &c.) to reverse, *annul*,
make void, a will, contract, &c.

Casser un parlement ; to dissolve a parliament.

Casser un officier ; to *cashier*, break an officer.

Casser des troupes ; to *dissband* troops.

Casser quelqu'un ; to *turn one out of his place*.

O

¶. *Rompre*

¶. *Rompre la glace* signifies to take the first steps in an affair, overcome the first difficulties of it.

55. *Seulement* signifies sometimes so much as, even :—*J'ai salué une personne, qui n'a pas seulement daigné me regarder, &c.*

56. *Suppléer* (to supply, make up) is sometimes indifferently used, either with the Accusative or Dative Case :—*Je suppléerai le reste*, or *au reste*; I will make up the rest. But *suppléer*, with an Accusative regimen, signifies properly, to make up all that is deficient; and with a Dative, to be sufficient for supplying, or making amends for, the defects of a thing :—*La Valeur supplée au nombre*; valour supplies the deficiency of numbers.

57. *Traiter mal* (to abuse) implies such kind of ill-treatment as does not go beyond ill language; and *mal-traiter*, such as extends to blows.

58. *Valoir* is to be as good as, to be equal in value, where any comparison is made :

Vous ne les valez pas; you are not as good as they are.

Il valoit mieux qu'elle; he was better than she.

It signifies to be worth, when we speak of things bought and sold :—*Cela ne vaut pas dix chelins*; that is not worth ten shillings.

N O T E.

But to be worth, when we speak of people's fortune and circumstances, is expressed in French by *avoir du bien*, and

and sometimes *avoir vaillant* :—*Il a dix mille pièces de bien*; he is worth ten thousand pounds: *Il n'a pas mille livres sterling vaillant*; he is not worth a thousand pounds: *Il a du bien*; he is worth money: *Il n'a rien*; he is worth nothing.

59. *Voilà* and *voici*.—*Voilà* points at something or somebody, and has the force of a Verb, making a complete sentence, with a Noun after it, or a Pronoun before, which is usually englished by *there is*, *that is*, *there are*, *those are*, &c.:—*Voilà l'homme*; *that is* the man: *Le voilà*, *la voilà*, &c.

Voici is construed after the same manner, but it denotes, and points at, a very near object. Sometimes *le voici* and *voilà* are followed by a Relative and a Verb:—*Le voici qui vient*; *here he is coming*: *La voilà qui gronde*; *there she is scolding*.

There is a material difference to be observed in the use of *voici* and *voilà*: in many sentences where they are used, *voici* refers to something coming after it, and *voilà* to something which had gone before:—*Je l'ai envoyé chercher, et voici pourquoi*; *j'ai des affaires qui exigent que nous nous voyions*. *Voici* there marks that the reason is to follow:

J'ai des affaires avec cet homme, qui exigent que nous nous voyions, voilà pourquoi je l'ai envoyé chercher; where *voilà* evidently shews the reason to have preceded it.

Voilà, followed by an Adjective, and preceded by a Pronoun Personal, denotes, and stands for, the Verb *être*, in the Present Tense:—*Voyez*

comme les voilà mouillés ; see how wet they are.

Comme la voilà triste ; how sorrowful she is.

Nous voilà quittes ; we are quit, or even.

Les voilà fachés ; they are vexed or angry.

Voilà qu'on m'appelle ; somebody calls me.

Ne nous voilà pas mal ; we are in *a fine pickle*.

Voilà bien du préambule ; what a deal of preamble.

Les folles raisons que voilà ! foolish reasons those!

60. *Il y a*, with a Negative and *que*, is used in the following acceptation : — *Vous vous imaginez qu'il n'y a qu'à demander ;* you fancy that you have *nothing to do but ask*.

Elle croit qu'il n'y a qu'à dire ; she thinks that speaking will do.

61. The Names of some parts of the bodies of some animals are not the same in French as in English.

With respect to the foot, we use *pié* of such animals only as are hooved; and *patte* of all the others.

Le pié d'un cheval, d'un boeuf, d'un cerf, &c.
La patte d'un chien, d'un chat, d'une souris,
d'un lion, d'un oiseau, &c. — We say, *Les griffes d'un lion, d'un chat*; a lion's or cat's paws: *Les serres d'un aigle, d'un épervier*; the talons of an eagle, a hawk, &c. : *Les bras d'une écrevisse* & *d'un cancre*; the claws of a crayfish, &c. : *Les gardes d'un sanglier*; the hinder claws of a wild boar.

With

With respect to the mouth, we say, *La bouche d'un cheval*; a horse's mouth: *La gueule d'un lion*, *d'un chien*, *d'un chat*, *d'un loup*, *d'un serpent*, *d'un dragon*, &c.; the mouth of a lion, &c.: *Le muffle d'un cerf*, *d'un lion*, *d'un tigre*, *d'un taureau*; the muzzle or mouth of a stag, &c.

We say, for the nostrils of a horse, *Les naseaux d'un cheval*, and not *les narines*:—*Le groin d'un porceau*; the snout of a hog: *La buse d'un sanglier*, *d'un saumon*, et *d'un brochet*; the head of a wild boar, of a pike, and the jowl of a salmon: *Le poil d'un chien*, *d'un chat*, *d'un cheval*, et des autres animaux; the hair of a dog, &c.: *La crinière d'un cheval*, & *d'un lion*; the mane of a horse, &c.: *Du trin*, horse-hair (of the tail.) The hair of the human body is *le poil*; but that of the head, *les cheveux*.

Speaking of deer, we call *boss* what in English is called *borns* or *bead*:—*Un bois de cerf*, *de daim*, *de chevreuil*; a stag's, doe's, or roe-buck's *boss*: but when it is manufactured, we call it *corne*:—*La manche de mon couteau est de corne de cerf*, &c.

62. The sounds of beasts and birds deserve to be remarked:

Les oiseaux chantent et gazouillent; birds sing and chirp.

Le ramage des oiseaux, the singing, chirping, or warbling of birds.

Le perroquet parle, the parrot talks.

La pie caquette, the magpie chatters.

La mèrle siffle, the black-bird whistles.

La colombe gémit, the dove coos.

*Le coq chante**, the cock crows.

Le corbeau et } croassent, { the raven and }

La grenouille } croasent, { the frog } croak.

Le chien aboie et beurle, the dog barks and bowls.

Les petits chiens japent, the puppies yelp.

Le chat miaule et file, the cat mews and purrs.

Le loup beurle, the wolf bowls.

Le renard glapit, the fox yelps.

Le lièvre cric, the hare squeaks.

La brebis bête, the sheep bleats or bays.

Le serpent fiffle, the snake hisses.

Le porceau grogne, the hog grunts.

Le cheval hennit, the horse neighs.

L'âne braît, the ass brays.

*Le boeuf et la vache } the ox and cow
beuglent et meuglent, } bellow and low.*

Le taureau mugit, the bull roars.

Le lion rugit, the lion roars.

63. The following List of Verbs, attended by certain Nouns without the Article, with a particular, idiomatical meaning, will not be found unworthy of attention.

Ajouter foi, to give credit, believe.

Avoir accès, to have free access.

affairs, to have to do, or business.

besoin, to want, to be in want of.

appétit, to have a stomach, or

bon appetit, a good appetite.

grand appetit, a good appetite.

faim, to be hungry.

* *et coche la poule,* and treads the hen.

Avoir

<i>Avoir</i>	<i>grand faim,</i>	very hungry.
	<i>soif,</i>	to be dry or thirsty.
	<i>grand soif,</i>	— very thirsty.
	<i>froid,</i>	to be cold.
	<i>chaud,</i>	— hot.
	<i>cours,</i>	to take, be in vogue.
	<i>envie,</i>	to have a mind, desire.
	<i>dessein,</i>	to design, intend.
	<i>droit,</i>	to have a right.
	<i>égard,</i>	to have a regard.
	<i>coutume,</i>	to use, to be wont.
	<i>espérance,</i>	to hope.
	<i>compassion,</i>	to compassionate, commis-
	<i>pitié,</i>	to pity, have pity for. [rate.
	<i>bonte,</i>	to be ashamed.
	<i>attention,</i>	to attend to,
	<i>part,</i>	to have a share of, to be con-
	<i>patience,</i>	to have patience. [cerned in.
	<i>confiance,</i>	to repose confidence in.
	<i>peur,</i>	to fear, be afraid.
	<i>connaissance, avis,</i>	to have notice.
	<i>permission,</i>	— permission, leave, or
	<i>carte blanche,</i>	— power.
	<i>plein pouvoir,</i>	full power, and
	<i>tout pouvoir,</i>	liberty.
	<i>lieu,</i>	to have room.
	<i>sujet,</i>	— reason.
	<i>raison,</i>	to be in the right.
	<i>justice,</i>	to have justice.
	<i>soin,</i>	— care.
	<i>grand soin,</i>	— great or special care.
	<i>ordre,</i>	to receive orders.
	<i>occasion,</i>	to have an opportunity.
	<i>obligation,</i>	to be obligated.
	<i>tort,</i>	to be in the wrong.
	<i>grand tort,</i>	— very much in the wrong.
	<i>borreur,</i>	to quake with horror.
	<i>vent et marée,</i>	to fail with wind and tide.
	<i>querelle,</i>	to have a quartel.
	<i>rappart,</i>	to regard, respect, refer to.

Avoir

<i>mal</i>	<i>à la tête,</i> <i>aux dents,</i> <i>aux yeux,</i> <i>aux pieds,</i> <i>au ventre,</i> to have <i>au côté,</i> <i>au bras,</i> <i>à l'épaule,</i> <i>au nez,</i> <i>à l'oreille,</i>	<i>the head-ach.</i> <i>tooth-ach.</i> <i>sore eyes.</i> <i>sore feet.</i> <i>the belly ach.</i> <i>a pain } side,</i> <i>in } arm,</i> <i>one's } shoulder.</i> <i>a sore nose.</i> <i>sore ears.</i>
------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Chanter

<i>pouilles,</i>	to call names, rail at one.
<i>goguettes,</i>	
<i>matines,</i>	to sing { matins.
<i>vêpres,</i>	

Chercher

<i>chicanie,</i>	to cavil.
<i>fortune,</i>	to seek one's fortune.
<i>guerre,</i>	to pick a quarrel.
<i>malheur,</i>	to court misfortune.

Couper

<i>court,</i>	to stop the course.
---------------	---------------------

Courir

<i>risque,</i>	to run the risque.
----------------	--------------------

Crier

<i>vengeance,</i>	to call for vengeance.
-------------------	------------------------

Demander

<i>audience,</i>	to ask an audience.
<i>avis,</i>	— advice.
<i>caution,</i>	— security.
<i>compte,</i>	— an account.
<i>conseil,</i>	— counsel.
<i>grâce, pardon,</i>	— pardon.
<i>quartier,</i>	to beg for quarter.
<i>justice,</i>	to demand justice.
<i>raison,</i>	— satisfaction.
<i>satisfaction,</i>	

Demeurer

<i>court,</i>	to be at a stand, to stop.
---------------	----------------------------

Dire

<i>vrai,</i>	to speak truth.
<i>faux,</i>	to say what is false.

Dire

Dire	<i>matines,</i>	to say matins.
	<i>vépres, &c.</i>	— vespers, &c.
Donner	<i>atteinte,</i>	to strike at.
	<i>audience,</i>	to give an audience.
	<i>avis,</i>	to give advice, to let one know.
	<i>beau jeu,</i>	fair play.
	<i>conseil,</i>	counsel.
	<i>caution,</i>	bail, security.
	<i>carrière à son esprit,</i>	full scope to one's wit.
	<i>congé,</i>	leave, also an holiday.
	<i>courage,</i>	to encourage.
	<i>permission,</i>	to give permission.
	<i>envie,</i>	to give one a desire, set him
	<i>exemple,</i>	to set an example. [agog.
	<i>parole,</i>	to give one's promise.
	<i>pouvoir,</i>	power.
	<i>plein pouvoir,</i>	full power.
	<i>tout pouvoir,</i>	and
	<i>carte blanche,</i>	liberty.
	<i>part,</i>	to impart a thing to one.
	<i>ordre,</i>	to give orders.
	<i>charge,</i>	to charge one.
	<i>vent,</i>	to give vent.
	<i>leçon,</i>	to give a lesson.
	<i>heure,</i>	to appoint an hour.
	<i>jour,</i>	to fix upon a day.
	<i>cours,</i>	to make a thing current.
	<i>avantage,</i>	to give one an advantage, a hold
	<i>quartier,</i>	to give quarter. [upon one.
	<i>quittance,</i>	to give a receipt, discharge.
	<i>rendez-vous,</i>	to (make an) assignation, ap-
		[point a place of meeting.]
	<i>lieu,</i>	to give room.
	<i>sujet,</i>	occasion.
	<i>raison,</i>	reason.
	<i>occasion,</i>	an opportunity.
Entendre	<i>malice { à quelque } finesse { châse, }</i>	{ to be acquainted with the jest.
	<i>raillerie,</i>	to take a joke well.
		* Il n'entend pas raillerie, he is no joker.
		Entendre

298 A System of FRENCH SYNTAX.

Extendre vêpres, to be at vespers.

L'échapper belle, to have a narrow escape.

Faire abjurations, to abjure, recant.

abstinence, to fast.

alliance, to make an alliance.

alte, to halt.

aignade, to take in fresh water.

amâs, to heap up.

argent, to raise money.

amitié, to shew one's self kind to one,

sur la pér- } [do him favours.

arrêt } *soune de* } to arrest one.

{ *quelqu'un,*

affairs, to make an end of a business.

attention, to attend to, mind.

bénit, to make use of a fave-all.

cas (de) to value.

compte, to assure one's self.

affront, to affront.

banqueroute, to break, be a bankrupt.

bonne ou } *à* } to put a good or a bad face
man- } *quelque* } on the matter.

voise } *chôse,*

mine } to cut.

brûche,

bombarde,

bonne chere, to feast, live, feed luxuriously.

grand' chere,

choix, to make choice of, chuse.

d'pit (à quelqu'un) to vex, despite one.

difficulté, to make a scruple.

conscience, to scruple, to make a consci-

compassion, to excite compassion. [ence of.

confidence, to trust a secret with one.

corps neuf, to take a new lease.

éclat, to break out, make a noise.

envie, to raise envy.

emplette, to purchase.

épreuve, to make an experiment, trial.

excuse, to beg pardon, excuse one's

face, [self.

Faire

<i>Faire</i>	
<i>feu,</i>	to fire.
<i>faux feu,</i>	to flash in the pan, miss fire.
<i>faute,</i>	to want for a thing.
<i>fête,</i>	to entertain one agreeably.
<i>feinte,</i>	to pretend.
<i>fond,</i>	to depend upon.
<i>fortune,</i>	to make a fortune.
<i>flèche,</i>	to make a shift.
<i>front,</i>	to face.
<i>foi,</i>	to prove.
<i>grâce,</i>	to favour.
<i>gloire (d'une chose)</i>	to value one's self upon a thing.
<i>gras du maigre,</i>	to eat flesh, or abstain from it.
<i>bonneur,</i>	to do honour.
<i>désbonneur,</i>	to disgrace.
<i>honte,</i>	to shame, disgrace (one.)
<i>horreur,</i>	to strike (one) with horror.
<i>infâme,</i>	to abuse, insult.
<i>injure,</i>	to do an injury, offend.
<i>inventaire,</i>	to make an inventory.
<i>impression,</i>	to make an impression.
<i>justice,</i>	to do justice.
<i>jour (je faire)</i>	to make way, break through.
<i>marché,</i>	to make a bargain, an agree-
<i>main basse</i>	to put to the sword. [ment.
<i>mine (de)</i>	to look as if, seem.
<i>montre,</i>	
<i>parade,</i>	to make a parade, or shew.
<i>montre (à une armée)</i>	to review, pay off an army,
<i>naufrage,</i>	to be shipwrecked. [SULLY.
<i>ombrage,</i>	to give umbrage.
<i>pact,</i>	to make an alliance, compact.
<i>part,</i>	to impart, communicate.
<i>pari,</i>	
<i>gageure,</i>	to lay, or lay a wager.
<i>pitié,</i>	to move or raise pity, com-
<i>peine,</i>	to make uneasy. [passion.
<i>plaisir,</i>	to do a pleasure.
<i>peur,</i>	to affright.
<i>partie,</i>	to make a party. [for.
<i>penitence,</i>	to do penance, repent, atone
<i>présent,</i>	to make a present, present
<i>place,</i>	to make room. [with.

Faire

<i>Faire</i>	<i>provision,</i>	to provide or supply one's self
	<i>preuve,</i>	to prove. [with.
	<i>quarier,</i>	to give quarter.
	<i>aison,</i>	to pledge one, satisfy one.
	<i>réflexion,</i>	to reflect.
	<i>réparation,</i>	to make reparation.
	<i>refort,</i>	to fly back again, after being
	<i>répaille,</i>	to feast, junket. [bent.
	<i>route,</i>	to sail, be bound to, (a sea-
	<i>satisfaction,</i>	to satisfy. [term.)
	<i>semblant,</i>	to pretend, feign, make as if
	<i>scrupule,</i>	to scruple. [one were.
	<i>sentinelle,</i>	to stand sentry.
	<i>serment,</i>	to make an oath.
	<i>signe,</i>	to make a sign, beckon to.
	<i>rapage,</i>	to make a noise, racket, &c.
	<i>tart,</i>	to wrong.
	<i>trafic ou commerce,</i>	to traffic, deal, or trade.
	<i>trêve,</i>	to forbear. [self in it.
	<i>triomph,</i>	to glory in a thing, pride one's
	<i>usage,</i>	to use, make use of.
	<i>vie qui dure,</i>	to live within compass.
	<i>bonne vie,</i>	to lead a merry life.
	<i>joyeuse vie,</i>	
	<i>veille,</i>	to set sail.
<i>Il fait</i>	<i>jour,</i>	it is day-light, or
	<i>clair,</i>	— broad day.
	<i>nuit,</i>	— night.
	<i>sombre,</i>	— cloudy.
	<i>obscur,</i>	— dark.
	<i>chaud,</i>	— hot.
	<i>froid,</i>	— cold.
	<i>beau,</i>	— fine.
	<i>blau</i>	— fine
	<i>mauvais</i>	
	<i>tems,</i>	
	<i>vilain</i>	bad } weather.
	<i>sale,</i>	— bad }
	<i>crotté,</i>	
	<i>brouillard,</i>	— dirty (weather.)
	<i>vent,</i>	— foggy.
	<i>soleil,</i>	the wind blows, it is windy.
	<i>clair de lune,</i>	the sun shines. [shines.
		it is moon-light, the moon
		<i>Filer</i>

IDIOMATIC EXAMPLES. 301

<i>Filer</i>	<i>doux,</i>	to give fair words.
<i>Gagner</i>	<i>pays,</i>	to scamper away.
<i>Jetter</i>	<i>feu et flammes,</i>	to fret and fume.
<i>Lacher</i>	<i>prise,</i>	to let go one's hold.
<i>Laisser</i>	<i>parole,</i>	to leave word.
<i>Lier</i>	<i>commerce,</i> <i>amitié,</i>	to engage in a familiar correspondence or friendship (with one.)
<i>Mettre</i>	<i>bas,</i> <i>fin,</i> <i>pié à terre,</i> <i>ordre à ses affaires,</i>	to bring forth. put an end. to alight. to settle one's affairs.
<i>Obtenir</i>	<i>permission,</i>	to obtain permission.
<i>Parler</i>	<i>raison,</i> <i>sens commun,</i> <i>juste,</i> <i>vrai,</i> <i>Français,</i> <i>Latin,</i> <i>Anglois, &c.</i>	to speak reason. — common sense. — right. — true. — French, — or plain, — Latin, — when — English, &c. — spoken respectively, by different na- tions, of their own language.
<i>Perdre</i>	<i>courage,</i> <i>patience,</i> <i>terre,</i> <i>fond;</i>	to be disheartened, to despond. to lose one's patience. to go out of one's depth. to drive from anchor.
<i>Plier</i>	<i>baggage,</i>	to pack off, bag and baggage.
<i>Porter</i>	<i>bonheur,</i> <i>malheur,</i> <i>guignon,</i> <i>compassion,</i>	to bring, or cause good — ill — bad
		fortune or luck.
		<i>Porter</i>

<i>Porter</i>	<i>comp.,</i> <i>int. orig. or</i> <i>préjudice,</i> <i>envie,</i> <i>requiert de</i> <i>témoignage,</i> <i>honneur,</i> <i>base sur</i> <i>respect,</i>	<i>to strike home.</i> <i>to be prejudicial, to prejudice.</i> <i>to envy.</i> <i>to bear witness.</i> <i>to honour.</i> <i>to respect.</i>
<i>Prendre</i>	<i>avantage,</i> <i>conseil,</i> <i>avis,</i> <i>chair,</i> <i>courage,</i> <i>congé,</i> <i>gards,</i> <i>feu,</i> <i>confiance,</i> <i>connaissance,</i> <i>couleur,</i> <i>cours,</i> <i>heure,</i> <i>exemple (sur</i> <i>quelqu'un)</i> <i>faveur,</i> <i>fin,</i> <i>gout,</i> <i>jour,</i> <i>balme,</i> <i>langue,</i> <i>naisance,</i> <i>médecine,</i> <i>pitié,</i> <i>part,</i> <i>intérêt,</i> <i>plaisir,</i> <i>place,</i> <i>patience,</i> <i>possession,</i> <i>pié,</i> <i>racine,</i> <i>peine,</i>	<i>to take advantage (of.)</i> <i>to take (one's) advice.</i> <i>to gather flesh.</i> <i>to take courage, cheer up.</i> <i>to take one's leave.</i> <i>to take care or notice. (<i>To take care</i> governs the Subjunctive with <i>ne</i>; <i>to take notice</i>, the Indicative.)</i> <i>to take, to catch fire.</i> <i>to confide.</i> <i>to inform one's self of a thing.</i> <i>to begin to be brown.</i> <i>to take, to be in vogue.</i> <i>to fix upon a time, day, hour.</i> <i>to take pattern (by any one.)</i> <i>to get in favour.</i> <i>to end.</i> <i>to like.</i> <i>to appoint a day, make an af-</i> <i>to take breath. [signation.</i> <i>to get intelligence, find out.</i> <i>to be born.</i> <i>to take physic.</i> <i>to take pity, compassion.</i> <i>to take part, interest, concern</i> <i>(in any thing.)</i> <i>to take pleasure, delight, in a</i> <i>to take one's place. [thing.</i> <i>to take patience, bear, wait pa-</i> <i>to enter into possession. [tiently.</i> <i>to take, get footing,</i> <i>to take root, get a footing.</i> <i>to take pains.</i>

Prendre

<i>Prendre</i>	<i>ſéance,</i>	to take one's place (in—) &c.
	<i>ſel,</i>	to take salt, to answer well for ſalting, (spoken of meats.)
	<i>ſoin,</i>	to take care of, look to, or after
	<i>terre,</i>	to land, get ashore. [a thing.
	<i>prétexte,</i>	to take a pretence.
	<i>parti,</i>	to enlist as a soldier.
<i>Prêter</i>	<i>ſerment,</i>	to take an oath.
<i>Promettre</i>	<i>merveilles,</i>	to promise wonders.
<i>Recevoir</i>	<i>ordre,</i>	to receive orders.
<i>Rendre</i>	<i>compte,</i>	{ of. to account for, give an account
	<i>gorge,</i>	to bring off the stomach, dif-
	<i>gloire,</i>	to give glory. [gorge.
	<i>grâce,</i>	to return thanks.
	<i>hommage,</i>	to pay hommage.
	<i>justice,</i>	to do justice.
	<i>raifon,</i>	to give an account of.
	<i>ſervice,</i>	to do service.
	<i>témoignage,</i>	to witness.
	<i>visite,</i>	to pay a visit.
<i>Sçavoir</i>	<i>gré,</i>	to take a thing kindly.
<i>Tenir</i>	<i>bon,</i>	to stand firm, not to give over.
	<i>compte (de quelque</i>	{ to keep an account of, al-
	<i>chôſe à quelqu'un),</i>	{ low one for any thing.
	<i>lieu (de)</i>	to be in the place of.
	<i>tête,</i>	to cope with one, oppose, resist.
	<i>parole,</i>	to be as good as one's word.
	<i>pié à boule,</i>	to stand fair.
	<i>table ouverte,</i>	to keep an open table.
	<i>boutique,</i>	to keep a shop, be a shopkeeper.
	<i>caffé,</i>	to keep a coffee-house.
	<i>cabarét,</i>	to keep a tavern.
<i>Tirer</i>	<i>avantage, ou</i>	to make an advantage of a
	<i>parte,</i>	thing.
<i>Vivre</i>	<i>content,</i>	to live contentedly.
<i>Vouloir</i>	<i>mal (à quelqu'un)</i>	to bear one a grudge.

Some

Some words are joined to *c'est* in like manner :
malheureux, dommage, heureux, &c.; it is *sad*,
pity, a shame, &c.

64. Before we close this Chapter of Idioms, it will not be amiss to mention two, with respect to the French, as compared with the English.

We say in English, *I wish you would not do that*, where the Negative is joined to the latter Verb; but in French we never say, *Je souhaiterois que vous ne fassiez cela*, but, *Je ne souhaiterois pas que vous fassiez cela*, or, *Je ne veux pas que vous fassiez cela*.

In English we also say, *You ought not to have done that*, putting the Infinitive in the past time, without changing the first Verb *ought*: on the contrary, in French, the change of time takes place with the first Verb, and the Infinitive Verb continues present; *Vous n'avez pas dû faire cela*. *Elle l'a juré quand elle en euroit dû revoquer l'engagement*, if her senses were made to govern her.

F I N I S.



MVSEVM
BRITAN
NICVM

